

APPLE II

REFERENCE MANUAL

<http://www.turbo-2.com/apple>



NOTICE

Apple Computer Inc. reserves the right to make improvements in the product described in this manual at any time and without notice.

DISCLAIMER OF ALL WARRANTIES AND LIABILITY

APPLE COMPUTER INC. MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS MANUAL OR WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE DESCRIBED IN THIS MANUAL, ITS QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. APPLE COMPUTER INC. SOFTWARE IS SOLD OR LICENSED "AS IS." THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO ITS QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE IS WITH THE BUYER. SHOULD THE PROGRAMS PROVE DEFECTIVE FOLLOWING THEIR PURCHASE, THE BUYER (AND NOT APPLE COMPUTER INC., ITS DISTRIBUTOR, OR ITS RETAILER) ASSUMES THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION AND ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT WILL APPLE COMPUTER INC. BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF APPLE COMPUTER INC. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

This manual is copyrighted. All rights are reserved. This document may not, in whole or part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated or reduced to any electronic medium or machine readable form without prior consent, in writing, from Apple Computer Inc.

© 1979, 1981 by APPLE COMPUTER INC.
10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010

The word Apple and the Apple Logo are registered trademarks of
APPLE COMPUTER INC.

APPLE Product #A2L0001A
(030-0004-C)

WARNING: This equipment has been certified to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device, pursuant to Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules. Only peripherals (computer input/output devices, terminals, printers, etc.) certified to comply with the Class B limits may be attached to this computer. Operation with non-certified peripherals is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception.

Apple II Reference Manual

**A REFERENCE MANUAL
FOR THE APPLE II
AND THE APPLE II PLUS
PERSONAL COMPUTERS**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 APPROACHING YOUR APPLE

2	THE POWER SUPPLY
3	THE MAIN BOARD
4	TALKING TO YOUR APPLE
5	THE KEYBOARD
6	READING THE KEYBOARD
9	THE APPLE VIDEO DISPLAY
9	THE VIDEO CONNECTOR
10	EURAPPLE (50 HZ) MODIFICATION
10	SCREEN FORMAT
12	SCREEN MEMORY
12	SCREEN PAGES
12	SCREEN SWITCHES
14	THE TEXT MODE
17	THE LOW-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (LO-RES) MODE
19	THE HIGH-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (HI-RES) MODE
20	OTHER INPUT/OUTPUT FEATURES
20	THE SPEAKER
22	THE CASSETTE INTERFACE
23	THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR
23	ANNUNCIATOR OUTPUTS
24	ONE-BIT INPUTS
24	ANALOG INPUTS
25	STROBE OUTPUT
25	VARIETIES OF APPLES
25	AUTOSTART ROM / MONITOR ROM
26	REVISION # / REVISION 1 BOARD
27	POWER SUPPLY CHANGES
27	THE APPLE II PLUS

CHAPTER 2 CONVERSATION WITH APPLES

- 30 STANDARD OUTPUT
- 30 THE STOP-LIST FEATURE
- 31 BUT SOFT, WHAT LIGHT THROUGH YONDER WINDOW BREAKS?
(OR, THE TEXT WINDOW)
- 32 SEEING IT ALL IN BLACK AND WHITE
- 32 STANDARD INPUT
- 32 RDKEY
- 33 GETLN
- 34 ESCAPE CODES
- 36 THE RESET CYCLE
- 36 AUTOSTART ROM RESET
- 37 AUTOSTART ROM SPECIAL LOCATIONS
- 38 "OLD MONITOR" ROM RESET

CHAPTER 3 THE SYSTEM MONITOR

- 40 ENTERING THE MONITOR
- 40 ADDRESSES AND DATA
- 41 EXAMINING THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY
- 41 EXAMINING SOME MORE MEMORY
- 43 EXAMINING STILL MORE MEMORY
- 43 CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF A LOCATION
- 44 CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF CONSECUTIVE LOCATIONS
- 44 MOVING A RANGE OF MEMORY
- 46 COMPARING TWO RANGES OF MEMORY
- 46 SAVING A RANGE OF MEMORY ON TAPE
- 47 READING A RANGE FROM TAPE
- 48 CREATING AND RUNNING MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAMS
- 49 THE MINI-ASSEMBLER

- 51 DEBUGGING PROGRAMS
- 53 EXAMINING AND CHANGING REGISTERS
- 54 MISCELLANEOUS MONITOR COMMANDS
- 55 SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR
- 57 CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS
- 59 SUMMARY OF MONITOR COMMANDS
- 61 SOME USEFUL MONITOR SUBROUTINES
- 65 MONITOR SPECIAL LOCATIONS
- 66 MINI-ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION FORMATS

CHAPTER 4

MEMORY ORGANIZATION

- 68 RAM STORAGE
- 70 RAM CONFIGURATION BLOCKS
- 72 ROM STORAGE
- 73 I/O LOCATIONS
- 74 ZERO PAGE MEMORY MAPS

CHAPTER 5

INPUT/OUTPUT STRUCTURE

- 78 BUILT-IN I/O
- 79 PERIPHERAL BOARD I/O
- 80 PERIPHERAL CARD I/O SPACE
- 80 PERIPHERAL CARD ROM SPACE
- 81 I/O PROGRAMMING SUGGESTIONS
- 82 PERIPHERAL SLOT SCRATCHPAD RAM
- 83 THE CSW/KSW SWITCHES
- 84 EXPANSION ROM

CHAPTER 6

HARDWARE CONFIGURATION

- 88 THE MICROPROCESSOR
- 90 SYSTEM TIMING
- 92 POWER SUPPLY
- 94 ROM MEMORY
- 95 RAM MEMORY
- 96 THE VIDEO GENERATOR
- 97 VIDEO OUTPUT JACKS
- 98 BUILT-IN I/O
- 99 "USER 1" JUMPER
- 100 THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR
- 100 THE KEYBOARD
- 102 KEYBOARD CONNECTOR
- 103 CASSETTE INTERFACE JACKS
- 104 POWER CONNECTOR
- 105 SPEAKER
- 105 PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

¹¹⁷ APPENDIX A
THE 6502 INSTRUCTION SET

¹²⁹ APPENDIX B
SPECIAL LOCATIONS

¹³⁵ APPENDIX C
ROM LISTINGS

¹⁷⁷ GLOSSARY

¹⁸⁵ BIBLIOGRAPHY

INDEX

- 190 GENERAL INDEX
- 194 INDEX OF FIGURES
- 195 INDEX OF PHOTOS
- 195 INDEX OF TABLES
- 195 CAST OF CHARACTERS

INTRODUCTION

This is the User Reference Manual for the Apple II and Apple II Plus personal computers. Like the Apple itself, this book is a tool. As with all tools, you should know a little about it before you start to use it.

This book will not teach you how to program. It is a book of facts, not methods. If you have just unpacked your Apple, or you do not know how to program in any of the languages available for it, then before you continue with this book, read one of the other manuals accompanying your Apple. Depending upon which variety of Apple you have purchased, you should have received one of the following:

Apple II BASIC Programming Manual

(part number A2L0005)

The Applesoft Tutorial

(part number A2L0018)

These are tutorial manuals for versions of the BASIC language available on the Apple. They also include complete instructions on setting up your Apple. The Bibliography at the end of this manual lists other books which may interest you.

There are a few different varieties of Apples, and this manual applies to all of them. It is possible that some of the features noted in this manual will not be available on your particular Apple. In places where this manual mentions features which are not universal to all Apples, it will use a footnote to warn you of these differences.

This manual describes the Apple II computer and its parts and procedures. There are sections on the System Monitor, the input/output devices and their operation, the internal organization of memory and input/output devices, and the actual electronic design of the Apple itself. For information on any other Apple hardware or software product, please refer to the manual accompanying that product.

RADIO AND TELEVISION INTERFERENCE

The equipment described in this manual generates and uses radio frequency energy. If it is not installed and used properly, that is in strict accordance with our instructions, it may cause interference to radio and television reception.

This equipment has been tested and complies with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules. These rules are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation.

You can determine whether your computer is causing interference by turning it off. If the interference stops, it was probably caused by the computer. If your computer does cause interference to radio or television reception, you can try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- Turn the TV or radio antenna until the interference stops.
- Move the computer to one side or the other of the TV or radio.
- Move the computer farther away from the TV or radio.
- Plug the computer into an outlet that is on a different circuit from the TV or radio. (That is, make certain the computer and the TV or radio are on circuits controlled by different circuit breakers or fuses.)

If necessary, you should consult your dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. You may find the following booklet prepared by the Federal Communications Commission helpful:

"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems"

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock number 004-000-00345-4.

CHAPTER 1

APPROACHING YOUR APPLE

- 2 THE POWER SUPPLY
- 3 THE MAIN BOARD
- 4 TALKING TO YOUR APPLE
- 5 THE KEYBOARD
- 6 READING THE KEYBOARD
- 9 THE APPLE VIDEO DISPLAY
- 9 THE VIDEO CONNECTOR
- 10 EURAPPLE (50 HZ) MODIFICATION
- 10 SCREEN FORMAT
- 12 SCREEN MEMORY
- 12 SCREEN PAGES
- 12 SCREEN SWITCHES
- 14 THE TEXT MODE
- 17 THE LOW-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (LO-RES) MODE
- 19 THE HIGH-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (HI-RES) MODE
- 20 OTHER INPUT/OUTPUT FEATURES
- 20 THE SPEAKER
- 22 THE CASSETTE INTERFACE
- 23 THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR
- 23 ANNUNCIATOR OUTPUTS
- 24 ONE-BIT INPUTS
- 24 ANALOG INPUTS
- 25 STROBE OUTPUT
- 25 VARIETIES OF APPLES
- 25 AUTOSTART ROM / MONITOR ROM
- 26 REVISION 0 / REVISION 1 BOARD
- 27 POWER SUPPLY CHANGES
- 27 THE APPLE II PLUS

For detailed information on setting up your Apple, refer to Chapter 1 of either the **Apple BASIC Programming Manual** or **The Applesoft Tutorial**.

In this manual, all directional instructions will refer to this orientation: with the Apple's typewriter-like keyboard facing you, "front" and "down" are towards the keyboard, "back" and "up" are away. Remove the lid of the Apple by prying up the back edge until it "pops", then pull straight back on the lid and lift it off.

This is what you will see:

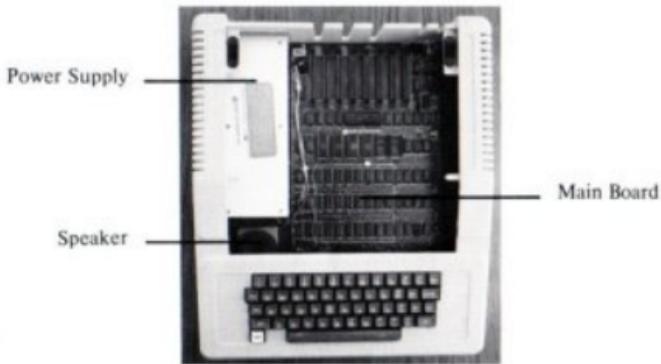


Photo 1. The Apple II.

THE POWER SUPPLY

The metal box on the left side of the interior is the Power Supply. It supplies four voltages: +5v, -5.2v, +11.8v, and -12.0v. It is a high-frequency "switching"-type power supply, with many protective features to ensure that there can be no imbalances between the different supplies. The main power cord for the computer plugs directly into the back of the power supply. The power-on switch is also on the power supply itself, to protect you and your fingers from accidentally becoming part of the high-voltage power supply circuit.



110 volt model



110/220 volt model

Photo 2. The back of the Apple Power Supply.

THE MAIN BOARD

The large green printed circuit board which takes up most of the bottom of the case is the computer itself. There are two slightly different models of the Apple II main board: the original (Revision 0) and the Revision 1 board. The slight differences between the two lie in the electronics on the board. These differences are discussed throughout this book. A summary of the differences appears in the section "Varieties of Apples" on page 25.

On this board there are about eighty integrated circuits and a handful of other components. In the center of the board, just in front of the eight gold-toothed edge connectors ("slots") at the rear of the board, is an integrated circuit larger than all others. This is the brain of your Apple. It is a Synertek/MOS Technology 6502 microprocessor. In the Apple, it runs at a rate of 1,023,000 machine cycles per second and can do over five hundred thousand addition or subtraction operations in one second. It has an addressing range of 65,536 eight-bit bytes. Its repertory includes 56 instructions with 13 addressing modes. This microprocessor and other versions of it are used in many computers systems, as well as other types of electronic equipment.

Just below the microprocessor are six sockets which may be filled with from one to six slightly smaller integrated circuits. These ICs are the Read-Only Memory (ROM) "chips" for the Apple. They contain programs for the Apple which are available the moment you turn on the power. Many programs are available in ROM, including the Apple System Monitor, the Apple Autostart Monitor, Apple Integer BASIC and Applesoft II BASIC, and the Apple *Programmer's Aid #1* utility subroutine package. The number and contents of your Apple's ROMs depend upon which type of Apple you have, and the accessories you have purchased.

Right below the ROMs and the central mounting nut is an area marked by a white square on the board which encloses twenty-four sockets for integrated circuits. Some or all of these may be filled with ICs. These are the main Random Access Memory (RAM) "chips" for your Apple. An Apple can hold 4,096 to 49,152 bytes of RAM memory in these three rows of components.* Each row can hold eight ICs of either the 4K or 16K variety. A row must hold eight of the same

* You can extend your RAM memory to 64K by purchasing the Apple Language Card, part of the Apple Language System (part number A2B0006).

type of memory components, but the two types can both be used in various combinations on different rows to give nine different memory sizes.* The RAM memory is used to hold all of the programs and data which you are using at any particular time. The information stored in RAM disappears when the power is turned off.

The other components on the Apple II board have various functions: they control the flow of information from one part of the computer to another, gather data from the outside world, or send information to you by displaying it on a television screen or making a noise on a speaker.

The eight long peripheral slots on the back edge of the Apple's board can each hold a peripheral card to allow you to extend your RAM or ROM memory, or to connect your Apple to a printer or other input/output device. These slots are sometimes called the Apple's "backplane" or "mother board".

TALKING TO YOUR APPLE

Your link to your Apple is at your fingertips. Most programs and languages that are used with the Apple expect you to talk to them through the Apple's keyboard. It looks like a normal typewriter keyboard, except for some minor rearrangement and a few special keys. For a quick review on the keyboard, see pages 6 through 12 in the **Apple II BASIC Programming Manual** or pages 5 through 11 in **The Applesoft Tutorial**.

Since you're talking with your fingers, you might as well be hearing with your eyes. The Apple will tell you what it is doing by displaying letters, numbers, symbols, and sometimes colored blocks and lines on a black-and-white or color television set.

* The Apple II is designed to use both the 16K and the less expensive 4K RAMs. However, due to the greater availability and reduced cost of the 16K chips, Apple now supplies only the 16K RAMs.

THE KEYBOARD

The Apple Keyboard

Number of Keys:	52	
Coding:	Upper Case ASCII	
Number of codes:	91	
Output:	Seven bits, plus strobe	
Power requirements:	+5v at 120mA -12v at 50mA	
Rollover:	2 key	
Special keys:	CTRL ESC RESET REPT → →	
Memory mapped locations:	Hex Decimal	
Data	SC000	49152 -16384
Clear	SC010	49168 -16368

The Apple II has a built-in 52-key typewriter-like keyboard which communicates using the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)*. Ninety-one of the 96 upper-case ASCII characters can be generated directly by the keyboard. Table 2 shows the keys on the keyboard and their associated ASCII codes. "Photo" 3 is a diagram of the keyboard.

The keyboard is electrically connected to the main circuit board by a 16-conductor cable with plugs at each end that plug into standard integrated circuit sockets. One end of this cable is connected to the keyboard; the other end plugs into the Apple board's keyboard connector, near the very front edge of the board, under the keyboard itself. The electrical specifications for this connector are given on page 102.

Most languages on the Apple have commands or statements which allow your program to accept input from the keyboard quickly and easily (for example, the INPUT and GET statements in BASIC). However, your programs can also read the keyboard directly.

* All ASCII codes used by the Apple normally have their high bit set. This is the same as standard mark-parity ASCII.



"Photo" 3. The Apple Keyboard.

READING THE KEYBOARD

The keyboard sends seven bits of information which together form one character. These seven bits, along with another signal which indicates when a key has been pressed, are available to most programs as the contents of a memory location. Programs can read the current state of the keyboard by reading the contents of this location. When you press a key on the keyboard, the value in this location becomes 128 or greater, and the particular value it assumes is the numeric code for the character which was typed. Table 3 on page 8 shows the ASCII characters and their associated numeric codes. The location will hold this one value until you press another key, or until your program tells the memory location to forget the character it's holding.

Once your program has accepted and understood a keypress, it should tell the keyboard's memory location to "release" the character it is holding and prepare to receive a new one. Your program can do this by referencing another memory location. When you reference this other location, the value contained in the first location will drop below 128. This value will stay low until you press another key. This action is called "clearing the keyboard strobe". Your program can either read or write to the special memory location; the data which are written to or read from that location are irrelevant. It is the mere *reference* to the location which clears the keyboard strobe. Once you have cleared the keyboard strobe, you can still recover the code for the key which was last pressed by adding 128 (hexadecimal \$80) to the value in the keyboard location.

These are the special memory locations used by the keyboard:

Table 1: Keyboard Special Locations			
Location:	Hex	Decimal	Description
SC000	49152	-16384	Keyboard Data
SC010	49168	-16368	Clear Keyboard Strobe

The [RESET] key at the upper right-hand corner does not generate an ASCII code, but instead is directly connected to the microprocessor. When this key is pressed, all processing stops. When the key is released, the computer starts a reset cycle. See page 36 for a description of the RESET

function.

The **CTRL** and **SHIFT** keys generate no codes by themselves, but only alter the codes produced by other keys.

The **REPT** key, if pressed alone, produces a duplicate of the last code that was generated. If you press and hold down the **REPT** key while you are holding down a character key, it will act as if you were pressing that key repeatedly at a rate of 10 presses each second. This repetition will cease when you release either the character key or **REPT**.

The POWER light at the lower left-hand corner is an indicator lamp to show when the power to the Apple is on.

Table 2: Keys and Their Associated ASCII Codes

Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both	Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both
space	\$A0	\$A0	\$A0	\$A0	RETURN	\$8D	\$8D	\$8D	\$8D
Ø	\$B0	\$B0	\$B0	\$B0	G	SC7	\$87	SC7	\$87
!'	SB1	SBI	SA1	SA1	H	SC8	\$88	SC8	\$88
2"	SB2	SB2	SA2	SA2	I	SC9	\$89	SC9	\$89
3#	SB3	SB3	SA3	SA3	J	SCA	\$8A	SCA	\$8A
4\$	SB4	SB4	SA4	SA4	K	SCB	\$8B	SCB	\$8B
5%	SB5	SB5	SA5	SA5	L	SCC	\$8C	SCC	\$8C
6&	SB6	SB6	SA6	SA6	M	SCD	\$8D	SCD	\$8D
7'	SB7	SB7	SA7	SA7	N°	SCE	\$8E	SDE	\$8E
8(SB8	SB8	SA8	SA8	O	SCF	\$8F	SCF	\$8F
9)	SB9	SB9	SA9	SA9	P@	SD0	\$90	SC0	\$80
;*	SBA	SBA	SAA	SAA	Q	SD1	\$91	SD1	\$91
;+	SBB	SBB	SAB	SAB	R	SD2	\$92	SD2	\$92
,<	SAC	SAC	SBC	SBC	S	SD3	\$93	SD3	\$93
=-	SAD	SAD	SBD	SBD	T	SD4	\$94	SD4	\$94
.>	SAE	SAE	SBE	SBE	U	SD5	\$95	SD5	\$95
/?	SAF	SAF	SBF	SBF	V	SD6	\$96	SD6	\$96
A	SC1	\$81	SC1	\$81	W	SD7	\$97	SD7	\$97
B	SC2	\$82	SC2	\$82	X	SD8	\$98	SD8	\$98
C	SC3	\$83	SC3	\$83	Y	SD9	\$99	SD9	\$99
D	SC4	\$84	SC4	\$84	Z	SDA	\$9A	SDA	\$9A
E	SC5	\$85	SC5	\$85	→	\$88	\$88	\$88	\$88
F	SC6	\$86	SC6	\$86	—	\$95	\$95	\$95	\$95
					ESC	\$9B	\$9B	\$9B	\$9B

All codes are given in hexadecimal. To find the decimal equivalents, use Table 3.

Table 3: The ASCII Character Set

Decimal:	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Hex:	\$80	\$90	\$A0	\$B0	\$C0	\$D0	\$E0	\$F0
0 \$0	nul	dle		0	@	P	p	
1 \$1	soh	dcl	!	1	A	Q	a	q
2 \$2	stx	dc2	"	2	B	R	b	r
3 \$3	etx	dc3	#	3	C	S	c	s
4 \$4	eot	dc4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
5 \$5	enq	nak	%	5	E	U	e	u
6 \$6	ack	syn	&	6	F	V	f	v
7 \$7	bel	etb	'	7	G	W	g	w
8 \$8	bs	can	(8	H	X	h	x
9 \$9	ht	em)	9	I	Y	i	y
10 \$A	lf	sub	*	:	J	Z	j	z
11 \$B	vt	esc	+	:	K	[k	{
12 \$C	ff	fs	,	<	L	\	l	-
13 \$D	cr	gs	-	=	M]	m	-
14 \$E	so	rs	.	>	N	,	n	-
15 \$F	si	us	/	?	O	_	o	rub

Groups of two and three lower case letters are abbreviations for standard ASCII control characters.

Not all the characters listed in this table can be generated by the keyboard. Specifically, the characters in the two rightmost columns (the lower case letters), the symbols [(left square bracket), \ (backslash), _ (underscore), and the control characters "fs", "us", and "rub", are not available on the Apple keyboard.

The decimal or hexadecimal value for any character in the above table is the sum of the decimal or hexadecimal numbers appearing at the top of the column and the left side of the row in which the character appears.

THE APPLE VIDEO DISPLAY

The Apple Video Display

Display type:	Memory mapped into system RAM
Display modes:	Text, Low-Resolution Graphics, High-Resolution Graphics
Text capacity:	960 characters (24 lines, 40 columns)
Character type:	5 × 7 dot matrix
Character set:	Upper case ASCII, 64 characters
Character modes:	Normal, Inverse, Flashing
Graphics capacity:	1,920 blocks (Low-Resolution) in a 40 by 48 array 53,760 dots (High-Resolution) in a 280 by 192 array
Number of colors:	16 (Low-Resolution Graphics) 6 (High-Resolution Graphics)

THE VIDEO CONNECTOR

In the right rear corner of the Apple II board, there is a metal connector marked "VIDEO". This connector allows you to attach a cable between the Apple and a closed-circuit video monitor. One end of the connecting cable should have a male RCA phono jack to plug into the Apple, and the other end should have a connector compatible with the particular device you are using. The signal that comes out of this connector on the Apple is similar to an Electronic Industries Association (EIA)-standard, National Television Standards Committee (NTSC)-compatible, positive composite color video signal. The level of this signal can be adjusted from zero to 1 volt peak by the small round potentiometer on the right edge of the board about three inches from the back of the board.

A non-adjustable, 2 volts peak version of the same video signal is available in two other places: on a single wire-wrap pin* on the left side of the board about two inches from the back of the board, and on one pin of a group of four similar pins also on the left edge near the back of the board. The other three pins in this group are connected to -5 volts, +12 volts, and ground. See page 97 for a full description of this auxiliary video connector.

* This pin is not present in Apple II systems with the Revision # board.

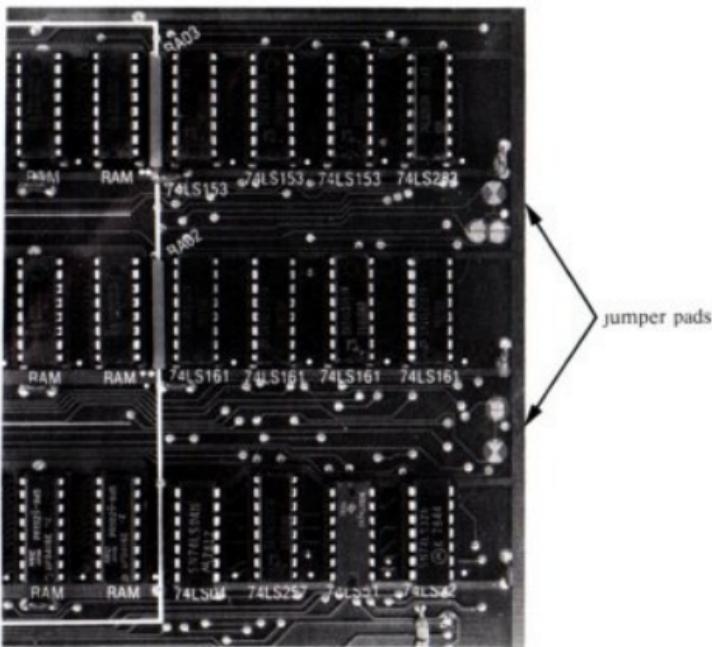


Photo 5. Eurapple (50 hz) Jumper Pads.

- 1) **Text.** The Apple can display 24 lines of numbers, special symbols, and upper-case letters with 40 of these characters on each line. These characters are formed in a dot matrix 7 dots high and 5 dots wide. There is a one-dot wide space on either side of the character and a one-dot high space above each line.
- 2) **Low-Resolution Graphics.** The Apple can present 1,920 colored squares in an array 40 blocks wide and 48 blocks high. The color of each block can be selected from a set of sixteen different colors. There is no space between blocks, so that any two adjacent blocks of the same color look like a single, larger block.
- 3) **High-Resolution Graphics.** The Apple can also display colored dots on a matrix 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The dots are the same size as the dots which make up the Text characters. There are six colors available in the High-Resolution Graphics mode: black, white, red, blue, green, and violet.* Each dot on the screen can be either black, white, or a color, although not all colors are available for every dot.

When the Apple is displaying a particular type of information on the screen, it is said to be in that particular "mode". Thus, if you see words and numbers on the screen, you can reasonably be assured that your Apple is in Text mode. Similarly, if you see a screen full of multicolored blocks, your computer is probably in Low-Resolution Graphics mode. You can also have a four-line "caption" of text at the bottom of either type of graphics screen. These four lines replace

* For Apples with Revision 0 boards, there are four colors: black, white, green, and violet.

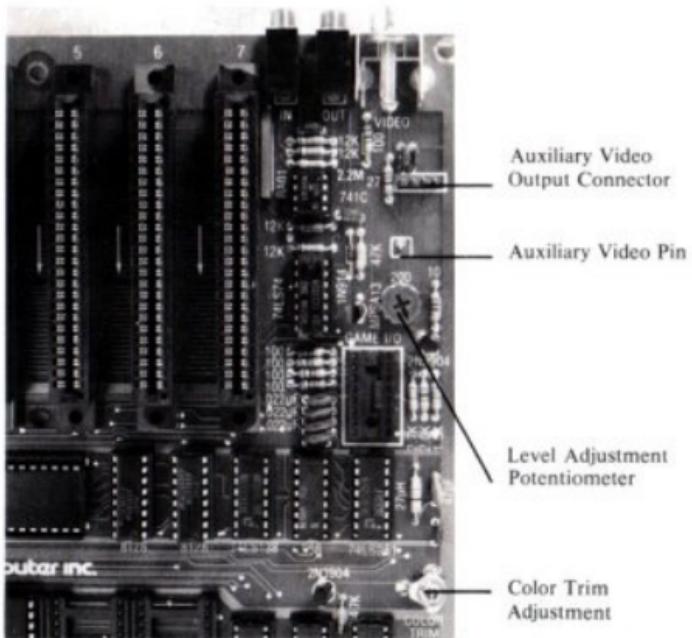


Photo 4. The Video Connectors and Potentiometer.

EURAPPLE (50 HZ) MODIFICATION

Your Apple can be modified to generate a video signal compatible with the CCIR standard used in many European countries. To make this modification, just cut the two X-shaped pads on the right edge of the board about nine inches from the back of the board, and solder together the three O-shaped pads in the same locations (see photo 5). You can then connect the video connector of your Apple to a European standard closed-circuit black-and-white or color video monitor. If you wish, you can obtain a "Eurocolor" encoder to convert the video signal into a PAL or SECAM standard color television signal suitable for use with any European television receiver. The encoder is a small printed circuit board which plugs into the rightmost peripheral slot (slot 7) in your Apple and connects to the single auxiliary video output pin.

WARNING: This modification will void the warranty on your Apple and requires the installation of a different main crystal. This modification is not for beginners.

SCREEN FORMAT

Three different kinds of information can be shown on the video display to which your Apple is connected:

the lower 8 rows of blocks in Low-Resolution Graphics, leaving a 40 by 40 array. In High-Resolution Graphics, they replace the bottom 32 rows of dots, leaving a 280 by 160 matrix. You can use these "mixed modes" to display text and graphics simultaneously, but there is no way to display both graphics modes at the same time.

SCREEN MEMORY

The video display uses information in the system's RAM memory to generate its display. The value of a single memory location controls the appearance of a certain, fixed object on the screen. This object can be a character, two stacked colored blocks, or a line of seven dots. In Text and Low-Resolution Graphics mode, an area of memory containing 1,024 locations is used as the source of the screen information. Text and Low-Resolution Graphics share this memory area. In High-Resolution Graphics mode, a separate, larger area (8,192 locations) is needed because of the greater amount of information which is being displayed. These areas of memory are usually called "pages". The area reserved for High-Resolution Graphics is sometimes called the "picture buffer" because it is commonly used to store a picture or drawing.

SCREEN PAGES

There are actually *two* areas from which each mode can draw its information. The first area is called the "primary page" or "Page 1". The second area is called the "secondary page" or "Page 2" and is an area of the same size immediately following the first area. The secondary page is useful for storing pictures or text which you want to be able to display instantly. A program can use the two pages to perform animation by drawing on one page while displaying the other and suddenly flipping pages.

Text and Low-Resolution Graphics share the same memory range for the secondary page, just as they share the same range for the primary page. Both mixed modes which were described above are also available on the secondary page, but there is no way to mix the two pages on the same screen.

Table 4: Video Display Memory Ranges

Screen	Page	Begins at: Hex	Begins at: Decimal	Ends at:
Text/Lo-Res	Primary	\$400	1024	\$7FF
	Secondary	\$800	2048	\$BFF
Hi-Res	Primary	\$2000	8192	\$3FFF
	Secondary	\$4000	16384	\$5FFF

SCREEN SWITCHES

The devices which decide between the various modes, pages, and mixes are called "soft switches". They are switches because they have two positions (for example: on or off, text or graphics) and they are called "soft" because they are controlled by the software of the computer.

A program can "throw" a switch by referencing the special memory location for that switch. The data which are read from or written to the location are irrelevant; it is the *reference to the address* of the location which throws the switch.

There are eight special memory locations which control the setting of the soft switches for the screen. They are set up in pairs; when you reference one location of the pair you turn its corresponding mode "on" and its companion mode "off". The pairs are:

Table 5: Screen Soft Switches			
Location:		Description:	
Hex	Decimal		
SC050	49232	-16304	Display a GRAPHICS mode.
SC051	49233	-16303	Display TEXT mode.
SC052	49234	-16302	Display all TEXT or GRAPHICS.
SC053	49235	-16301	Mix TEXT and a GRAPHICS mode.*
SC054	49236	-16300	Display the Primary page (Page 1).
SC055	49237	-16299	Display the Secondary page (Page 2).
SC056	49238	-16298	Display LO-RES GRAPHICS mode.*
SC057	49239	-16297	Display HI-RES GRAPHICS mode.*

There are ten distinct combinations of these switches:

Table 6: Screen Mode Combinations			
Primary Page		Secondary Page	
Screen	Switches	Screen	Switches
All Text	SC054 SC051	All Text	SC055 SC051
All Lo-Res	SC054 SC056	All Lo-Res	SC055 SC056
Graphics	SC052 SC050	Graphics	SC052 SC050
All Hi-Res	SC054 SC057	All Hi-Res	SC055 SC057
Graphics	SC052 SC050	Graphics	SC052 SC050
Mixed Text	SC054 SC056	Mixed Text	SC055 SC056
and Lo-Res	SC053 SC050	and Lo-Res	SC053 SC050
Mixed Text	SC054 SC057	Mixed Text	SC055 SC057
and Hi-Res	SC053 SC050	and Hi-Res	SC053 SC050

(Those of you who are learned in the ways of binary will immediately cry out, "Where's the other six!?", knowing full well that with 4 two-way switches there are indeed *sixteen* possible combinations. The answer to the mystery of the six missing modes lies in the TEXT/GRAFICS switch. When the computer is in Text mode, it can also be in one of six combinations of the Lo-Res/Hi-Res graphics mode, "mix" mode, or page selection. But since the Apple is displaying text, these different graphics modes are invisible.)

To set the Apple into one of these modes, a program needs only to refer to the addresses of the memory locations which correspond to the switches that set that mode. Machine language programs should use the hexadecimal addresses given above; BASIC programs should PEEK or POKE their decimal equivalents (given in Table 5, "Screen Soft Switches", above). The switches may be thrown in any order; however, when switching into one of the Graphics modes, it is helpful to throw the TEXT/GRAFICS switch last. All the other changes in mode will then take place invisibly behind the text, so that when the Graphics mode is set, the finished graphics

* These modes are only visible if the "Display GRAPHICS" switch is "on".

screen appears all at once.

THE TEXT MODE

In the Text mode, the Apple can display 24 lines of characters with up to 40 characters on each line. Each character on the screen represents the contents of one memory location from the memory range of the page being displayed. The character set includes the 26 upper-case letters, the 10 digits, and 28 special characters for a total of 64 characters. The characters are formed in a dot matrix 5 dots wide and 7 dots high. There is a one-dot wide space on both sides of each character to separate adjacent characters and a one-dot high space above each line of characters to separate adjacent lines. The characters are normally formed with white dots on a dark background; however, each character on the screen can also be displayed using dark dots on a white background or alternating between the two to produce a flashing character. When the Video Display is in Text mode, the video circuitry in the Apple turns off the color burst signal to the television monitor, giving you a clearer black-and-white display.*

The area of memory which is used for the primary text page starts at location number 1024 and extends to location number 2047. The secondary screen begins at location number 2048 and extends up to location 3071. In machine language, the primary page is from hexadecimal address \$400 to address \$7FF; the secondary page is from \$800 to \$BFF. Each of these pages is 1,024 bytes long. Those of you intrepid enough to do the multiplication will realize that there are only 960 characters displayed on the screen. The remaining 64 bytes in each page which are not displayed on the screen are used as temporary storage locations by programs stored in PROM on Apple Intelligent Interface® peripheral boards (see page 82).

Photo 6 shows the sixty-four characters available on the Apple's screen.



Photo 6. The Apple Character Set.

Table 7 gives the decimal and hexadecimal codes for the 64 characters in normal, inverse, and flashing display modes.

* This feature is not present on the Revision 0 board.

Table 7: ASCII Screen Characters

Decimal Hex	Inverse				Flashing				Normal				(Lowercase)			
	#	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
0 30	@	P	\$10	\$20	\$30	\$40	\$50	\$60	\$70	\$80	\$90	\$A0	\$B0	\$C0	\$D0	\$E0
1 \$1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1
2 \$2	B	R	-	2	B	R	-	2	B	R	-	2	B	R	-	2
3 \$3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3
4 \$4	D	T	\$	4	D	T	\$	4	D	T	\$	4	D	T	\$	4
5 \$5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5
6 \$6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6
7 \$7	G	W	-	7	G	W	-	7	G	W	-	7	G	W	-	7
8 \$8	H	X	(8	H	X	(8	H	X	(8	H	X	(8
9 \$9	I	Y)	9	I	Y)	9	I	Y)	9	I	Y)	9
10 \$A	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:
11 \$B	K	I	+	:	K	I	+	:	K	I	+	:	K	I	+	:
12 \$C	L	\	-	<	L	\	-	<	L	\	-	<	L	\	-	<
13 \$D	M)	-	=	M)	-	=	M)	-	=	M)	-	=
14 \$E	N	-	-	>	N	-	-	>	N	-	-	>	N	-	-	>
15 \$F	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?

S400	1024
S480	1152
S560	1280
S580	1408
S600	1536
S680	1664
S700	1792
S780	1920
S428	1064
S4A8	1192
S528	1320
S5A8	1448
S628	1576
S6A8	1704
S728	1832
S7A8	1960
S450	1104
S4D0	1232
S550	1360
S5D0	1488
S650	1616
S6D0	1744
S750	1872
S7D0	2000

8	\$80
1	\$81
2	\$82
3	\$83
4	\$84
5	\$85
6	\$86
7	\$87
8	\$88
9	\$89
10	\$8A
11	\$8B
12	\$8C
13	\$8D
14	\$8E
15	\$8F
16	\$10
17	\$11
18	\$12
19	\$13
20	\$14
21	\$15
22	\$16
23	\$17
24	\$18
25	\$19
26	\$1A
27	\$1B
28	\$1C
29	\$1D
30	\$1E
31	\$1F
32	\$20
33	\$21
34	\$22
35	\$23
36	\$24
37	\$25
38	\$26
39	\$27

Figure 1. Map of the Text Screen

Figure 1 is a map of the Apple's display in Text mode, with the memory location addresses for each character position on the screen.

THE LOW-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (LO-RES) MODE

In the Low-Resolution Graphics mode, the Apple presents the contents of the same 1,024 locations of memory as is in the Text mode, but in a different format. In this mode, each byte of memory is displayed not as an ASCII character, but as two colored blocks, stacked one atop the other. The screen can show an array of blocks 40 wide and 48 high. Each block can be any of sixteen colors. On a black-and-white television set, the colors appear as patterns of grey and white dots.

Since each byte in the page of memory for Low-Resolution Graphics represents two blocks on the screen, stacked vertically, each byte is divided into two equal sections, called (appropriately enough) "nybbles". Each nibble can hold a value from zero to 15. The value which is in the lower nibble of the byte determines the color for the upper block of that byte on the screen, and the value which is in the upper nibble determines the color for the lower block on the screen. The colors are numbered zero to 15, thus:

Table 8: Low-Resolution Graphics Colors					
Decimal	Hex	Color	Decimal	Hex	Color
0	\$0	Black	8	\$8	Brown
1	\$1	Magenta	9	\$9	Orange
2	\$2	Dark Blue	10	\$A	Grey 2
3	\$3	Purple	11	\$B	Pink
4	\$4	Dark Green	12	\$C	Light Green
5	\$5	Grey 1	13	\$D	Yellow
6	\$6	Medium Blue	14	\$E	Aquamarine
7	\$7	Light Blue	15	\$F	White

(Colors may vary from television to television, particularly on those without hue controls. You can adjust the tint of the colors by adjusting the COLOR TRIM control on the right edge of the Apple board.)

So, a byte containing the hexadecimal value \$D8 would appear on the screen as a brown block on top of a yellow block. Using decimal arithmetic, the color of the lower block is determined by the quotient of the value of the byte divided by 16; the color of the upper block is determined by the remainder.

Figure 2 is a map of the Apple's display in Low-Resolution Graphics mode, with the memory location addresses for each block on the screen.

Since the Low-Resolution Graphics screen displays the same area in memory as is used for the Text screen, interesting things happen if you switch between the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics modes. For example, if the screen is in the Low-Resolution Graphics mode and is full of colored blocks, and then the TEXT/GRAFICS screen switch is thrown to the Text mode, the screen will be filled with seemingly random text characters, sometimes inverse or flashing. Similarly, a screen full of text when viewed in Low-Resolution Graphics mode appears as long horizontal grey, pink, green or yellow bars separated by randomly colored blocks.

\$400	1024	8	\$00
\$480	1152	1	\$01
\$560	1280	2	\$02
\$580	1408	3	\$03
\$600	1536	4	\$04
\$680	1664	5	\$05
\$700	1792	6	\$06
\$780	1920	7	\$07
\$428	1064	8	\$08
\$4A8	1192	9	\$09
\$528	1320	10	\$0A
\$5A8	1448	11	\$0B
\$628	1576	12	\$0C
\$6A8	1704	13	\$0D
\$728	1832	14	\$0E
\$7A8	1960	15	\$0F
\$450	1104	16	\$10
\$4D0	1232	17	\$11
\$550	1360	18	\$12
\$5D0	1488	19	\$13
\$650	1616	20	\$14
\$6D0	1744	21	\$15
\$750	1872	22	\$16
\$7D0		23	\$17
		24	\$18
		25	\$19
		26	\$1A
		27	\$1B
		28	\$1C
		29	\$1D
		30	\$1E
		31	\$1F
		32	\$20
		33	\$21
		34	\$22
		35	\$23
		36	\$24
		37	\$25
		38	\$26
		39	\$27

Figure 2. Map of the Low-Resolution Graphics Mode

THE HIGH-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (HI-RES) MODE

The Apple has a second type of graphic display, called High-Resolution Graphics (or sometimes "Hi-res"). When your Apple is in the High-Resolution Graphics mode, it can display 53,760 dots in a matrix 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The screen can display black, white, violet, green, red, and blue dots, although there are some limitations concerning the color of individual dots.

The High-Resolution Graphics mode takes its data from an 8,192-byte area of memory, usually called a "picture buffer". There are two separate picture buffers: one for the primary page and one for the secondary page. Both of these buffers are independent of and separate from the memory areas used for Text and Low-Resolution Graphics. The primary page picture buffer for the High-Resolution Graphics mode begins at memory location number 8192 and extends up to location number 16383; the secondary page picture buffer follows on the heels of the first at memory location number 16384, extending up to location number 24575. For those of you with sixteen fingers, the primary page resides from \$2000 to \$3FFF and the secondary page follows in succession at \$4000 to \$5FFF. If your Apple is equipped with 16K (16,384 bytes) or less of memory, then the secondary page is inaccessible to you; if its memory size is less than 16K, then the entire High-Resolution Graphics mode is unavailable to you.

Each dot on the screen represents one bit from the picture buffer. Seven of the eight bits in each byte are displayed on the screen, with the remaining bit used to select the colors of the dots in that byte. Forty bytes are displayed on each line of the screen. The least significant bit (first bit) of the first byte in the line is displayed on the left edge of the screen, followed by the second bit, then the third, etc. The most significant (eighth) bit is not displayed. Then follows the first bit of the next byte, and so on. A total of 280 dots are displayed on each of the 192 lines of the screen.

On a black-and-white monitor or TV set, the dots whose corresponding bits are "on" (or equal to 1) appear white; the dots whose corresponding bits are "off" or (equal to 0) appear black. On a color monitor or TV, it is not so simple. If a bit is "off", its corresponding dot will always be black. If a bit is "on", however, its color will depend upon the *position* of that dot on the screen. If the dot is in the leftmost column on the screen, called "column 0", or in any even-numbered column, then it will appear violet. If the dot is in the rightmost column (column 279) or any odd-numbered column, then it will appear green. If two dots are placed side-by-side, they will both appear white. If the undisplayed bit of a byte is turned on, then the colors blue and red are substituted for violet and green, respectively.* Thus, there are six colors available in the High-Resolution Graphics mode, subject to the following limitations:

- 1) Dots in even columns must be black, violet, or blue.
- 2) Dots in odd columns must be black, green, or red.
- 3) Each byte must be either a violet/green byte or a blue/red byte. It is not possible to mix green and blue, green and red, violet and blue, or violet and red in the same byte.

* On Revision # Apple boards, the colors red and blue are unavailable and the setting of the eighth bit is irrelevant.

- 4) Two colored dots side by side always appear white, even if they are in different bytes.
- 5) On European-modified Apples, these rules apply but the colors generated in the High-Resolution Graphics mode may differ.

Figure 3 shows the Apple's display screen in High-Resolution Graphics mode with the memory addresses of each line on the screen.

OTHER INPUT/OUTPUT FEATURES

Apple Input/Output Features

Inputs:	Cassette Input Three One-bit Digital Inputs Four Analog Inputs
Outputs:	Cassette Output Built-In Speaker Four "Annunciator" Outputs Utility Strobe Output

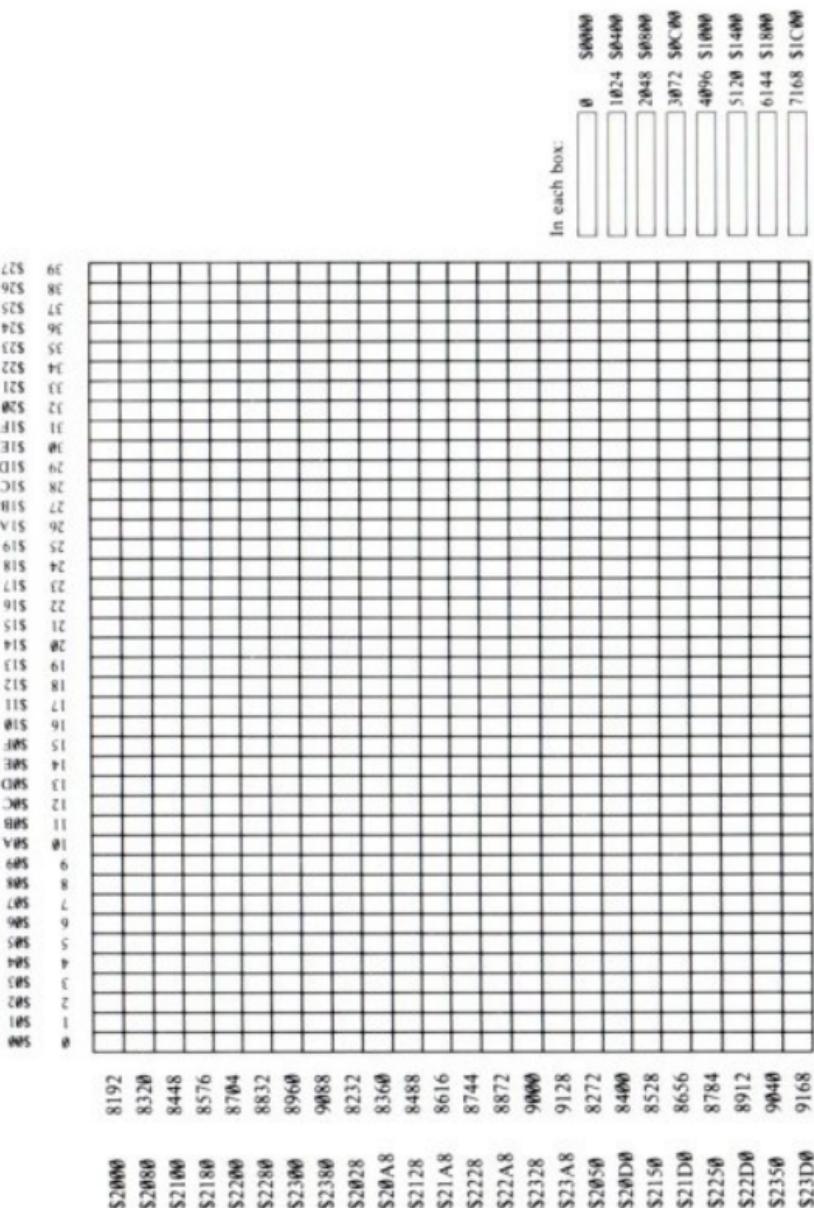
THE SPEAKER

Inside the Apple's case, on the left side under the keyboard, is a small 8 ohm speaker. It is connected to the internal electronics of the Apple so that a program can cause it to make various sounds.

The speaker is controlled by a soft switch. The switch can put the paper cone of the speaker in two positions: "in" and "out". This soft switch is not like the soft switches controlling the various video modes, but is instead a *toggle* switch. Each time a program references the memory address associated with the speaker switch, the speaker will change state: change from "in" to "out" or vice-versa. Each time the state is changed, the speaker produces a tiny "click". By referencing the address of the speaker switch frequently and continuously, a program can generate a steady tone from the speaker.

The soft switch for the speaker is associated with memory location number 49200. Any reference to this address (or the equivalent addresses -16336 or hexadecimal SC030) will cause the speaker to emit a click.

A program can "reference" the address of the special location for the speaker by performing a "read" or "write" operation to that address. The data which are read or written are irrelevant, as it is the *address* which throws the switch. Note that a "write" operation on the Apple's 6502 microprocessor actually performs a "read" before the "write", so that if you use a "write" operation to flip any soft switch, you will actually throw that switch *twice*. For toggle-type soft switches, such as the speaker switch, this means that a "write" operation to the special location



To obtain the address for any box, add the addresses for that box's box row, box column, and position in box.

controlling the switch will leave the switch in the same state it was in before the operation was performed.

THE CASSETTE INTERFACE

On the back edge of the Apple's main board, on the right side next to the VIDEO connector, are two small black packages labelled "IN" and "OUT". These are miniature phone jacks into which you can plug a cable which has a pair of miniature phono plugs on each end. The other end of this cable can be connected to a standard cassette tape recorder so that your Apple can save information on audio cassette tape and read it back again.

The connector marked "OUT" is wired to yet another soft switch on the Apple board. This is another toggle switch, like the speaker switch (see above). The soft switch for the cassette output plug can be toggled by referencing memory location number 49184 (or the equivalent -16352 or hexadecimal **SC020**). Referencing this location will make the voltage on the OUT connector swing from zero to 25 millivolts (one fortieth of a volt), or return from 25 millivolts back to zero. If the other end of the cable is plugged into the MICROPHONE input of a cassette tape recorder which is recording onto a tape, this will produce a tiny "click" on the recording. By referencing the memory location associated with the cassette output soft switch repeatedly and frequently, a program can produce a tone on the recording. By varying the pitch and duration of this tone, information may be encoded on a tape and saved for later use. Such a program to encode data on a tape is included in the System Monitor and is described on page 46.

Be forewarned that if you attempt to flip the soft switch for the cassette output by writing to its special location, you will actually generate *two* "clicks" on the recording. The reason for this is mentioned in the description of the speaker (above). You should only use "read" operations when toggling the cassette output soft switch.

The other connector, marked "IN", can be used to "listen" to a cassette tape recording. Its main purpose is to provide a means of listening to tones on the tape, decoding them into data, and storing them in memory. Thus, a program or data set which was stored on cassette tape may be read back in and used again.

The input circuit takes a 1 volt (peak-to-peak) signal from the cassette recorder's EARPHONE jack and converts it into a string of ones and zeroes. Each time the signal applied to the input circuit swings from positive to negative, or vice-versa, the input circuit changes state: if it was sending ones, it will start sending zeroes, and vice versa. A program can inspect the state of the cassette input circuit by looking at memory location number 49248 or the equivalents -16288 or hexadecimal **SC060**. If the value which is read from this location is greater than or equal to 128, then the state is a "one"; if the value in the memory location is less than 128, then the state is a "zero". Although BASIC programs can read the state of the cassette input circuit, the speed of a BASIC program is usually much too slow to be able to make any sense out of what it reads. There is, however, a program in the System Monitor which will read the tones on a cassette tape and decode them. This is described on page 47.

THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR

The purpose of the Game I/O connector is to allow you to connect special input and output devices to heighten the effect of programs in general, and specifically, game programs. This connector allows you to connect three one-bit inputs, four one-bit outputs, a data strobe, and four analog inputs to the Apple, all of which can be controlled by your programs. Supplied with your Apple is a pair of Game Controllers which are connected to cables which plug into the Game I/O connector. The two rotary dials on the Controllers are connected to two analog inputs on the Connector; the two pushbuttons are connected to two of the one-bit inputs.

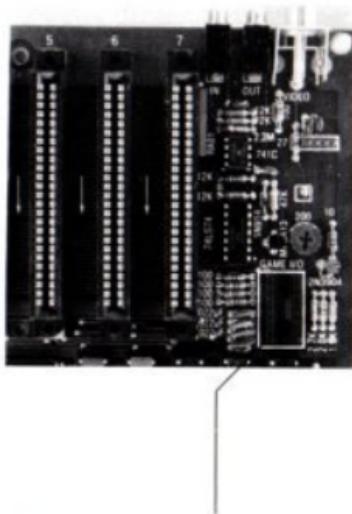


Photo 7. The Game I/O Connector.

ANNUNCIATOR OUTPUTS

The four one-bit outputs are called "annunciators". Each annunciator output can be used as an input to some other electronic device, or the annunciator outputs can be connected to circuits to drive lamps, relays, speakers, etc.

Each annunciator is controlled by a soft switch. The addresses of the soft switches for the annunciators are arranged into four pairs, one pair for each annunciator. If you reference the first address in a pair, you turn the output of its corresponding annunciator "off"; if you reference the second address in the pair, you turn the annunciator's output "on". When an annunciator is

"off", the voltage on its pin on the Game I/O Connector is near 0 volts; when an annunciator is "on", the voltage is near 5 volts. There are no inherent means to determine the current setting of an annunciator bit. The annunciator soft switches are:

Table 9: Annunciator Special Locations				
Ann.	State	Address:		Hex
		Decimal	Hex	
0	off	49240	-16296	SC058
	on	49241	-16295	SC059
1	off	49242	-16294	SC05A
	on	49243	-16293	SC05B
2	off	49244	-16292	SC05C
	on	49245	-16291	SC05D
3	off	49246	-16290	SC05E
	on	49247	-16289	SC05F

ONE-BIT INPUTS

The three one-bit inputs can each be connected to either another electronic device or to a push-button. You can read the state of any of the one-bit inputs from a machine language or BASIC program in the same manner as you read the Cassette Input, above. The locations for the three one-bit inputs have the addresses 49249 through 49251 (-16287 through -16285 or hexadecimal SC061 through SC063).

ANALOG INPUTS

The four analog inputs can be connected to 150K Ohm variable resistors or potentiometers. The variable resistance between each input and the +5 volt supply is used in a one-shot timing circuit. As the resistance on an input varies, the timing characteristics of its corresponding timing circuit change accordingly. Machine language programs can sense the changes in the timing loops and obtain a numerical value corresponding to the position of the potentiometer.

Before a program can start to read the setting of a potentiometer, it must first reset the timing circuits. Location number 49264 (-16272 or hexadecimal SC070) does just this. When you reset the timing circuits, the values contained in the four locations 49252 through 49255 (-16284 through -16281 or SC064 through SC067) become greater than 128 (their high bits are set). Within 3.060 milliseconds, the values contained in these four locations should drop below 128. The exact time it takes for each location to drop in value is directly proportional to the setting of the game paddle associated with that location. If the potentiometers connected to the analog inputs have a greater resistance than 150K Ohms, or there are no potentiometers connected, then the values in the game controller locations may never drop to zero.

STROBE OUTPUT

There is an additional output, called **CW40 STROBE**, which is normally +5 volts but will drop to zero volts for a duration of one-half microsecond under the control of a machine language or BASIC program. You can trigger this "strobe" by referring to location number 49216 (-16320 or SC04F). Be aware that if you perform a "write" operation to this location, you will trigger the strobe *twice* (see a description of this phenomenon in the section on the Speaker).

Table 10: Input/Output Special Locations

Function:	Address: Decimal	Hex	Read/Write
Speaker	49200	-16336	SC030
Cassette Out	49184	-16352	SC020
Cassette In	49256	-16288	SC060
Annunciators*	49240 through 49247	-16296 through -16289	SC058 through SC05F
Flag inputs	49249 49250 49251	-16287 -16286 -16285	SC061 SC062 SC063
Analog Inputs	49252 49253 49254 49255	-16284 -16283 -16282 -16281	SC064 SC065 SC066 SC067
Analog Clear	49264	-16272	SC070
Utility Strobe	49216	-16320	SC040

VARIETIES OF APPLES

There are a few variations on the basic Apple II computer. Some of the variations are revisions or modifications of the computer itself; others are changes to its operating software. These are the basic variations:

AUTOSTART ROM / MONITOR ROM

All Apple II Plus Systems include the Autostart Monitor ROM. All other Apple systems do not contain the Autostart ROM, but instead have the Apple System Monitor ROM. This version of the ROM lacks some of the features present in the Autostart ROM, but also has some features which are not present in that ROM. The main differences in the two ROMs are listed on the following pages.

* See the previous table.

- **Editing Controls.** The ESC-I, J, K, and M sequences, which move the cursor up, left, right, and down, respectively, are not available in the Old Monitor ROM.
- **Stop-List.** The Stop-List feature (invoked by a **CTRL S**), which allows you to introduce a pause into the output of most BASIC or machine language programs or listings, is not available in the Old Monitor ROM.
- **The RESET cycle.** When you first turn on your Apple or press **RESET**, the Old Monitor ROM will send you directly into the Apple System Monitor, instead of initiating a warm or cold start as described in "The RESET Cycle" on page 36.

The Old Monitor ROM does, however, support the STEP and TRACE debugging features of the System Monitor, described on page 51. The Autostart ROM does not recognize these Monitor commands.

REVISION 0 / REVISION 1 BOARD

The Revision 0 Apple II board lacks a few features found on the current Revision 1 version of the Apple II main board. To determine which version of the main board is in your Apple, open the case and look at the upper right-hand corner of the board. Compare what you see to Photo 4 on page 10. If your Apple does not have the single metal video connector pin between the four-pin video connector and the video adjustment potentiometer, then you have a Revision 0 Apple.

The differences between the Revision 0 and Revision 1 Apples are summarized below.

- **Color Killer.** When the Apple's Video Display is in Text mode, the Revision 0 Apple board leaves the color burst signal active on the video output circuit. This causes text characters to appear tinted or with colored fringes.
- **Power-on RESET.** Revision 0 Apple boards have no circuit to automatically initiate a RESET cycle when you turn the power on. Instead, you must press **RESET** once to start using your Apple.

Also, when you turn on the power to an Apple with a Revision 0 board, the keyboard will become active, as if you had typed a random character. When the Apple starts looking for input, it will accept this random character as if you had typed it. In order to erase this character, you should press **CTRL X** after you **RESET** your Apple when you turn on its power.

- **Colors in High-Resolution Graphics.** Apples with Revision 0 boards can generate only four colors in the High-Resolution Graphics mode: black, white, violet, and green. The high bit of each byte displayed on the Hi-Res screen (see page 19) is ignored.
- **24K Memory Map problem.** Systems with a Revision 0 Apple II board which contain 20K or 24K bytes of RAM memory appear to BASIC to have more memory than they actually do. See "Memory Organization", page 72, for a description of this problem.
- **50 Hz Apples.** The Revision 0 Apple II board does not have the pads and jumpers which you can cut and solder to convert the VIDEO OUT signal of your Apple to conform to the European PAL/SECAM television standard. It also lacks the third VIDEO connector, the single metal pin in front of the four-pin video connector.

- **Speaker and Cassette Interference.** On Apples with Revision 0 boards, any sound generated by the internal speaker will also appear as a signal on the Cassette Interface's OUT connector. If you leave the tape recorder in RECORD mode, then any sound generated by the internal speaker will also appear on the tape recording.
- **Cassette Input.** The input circuit for the Cassette Interface has been modified so that it will respond with more accuracy to a weaker input signal.

POWER SUPPLY CHANGES

In addition, some Apples have a version of the Apple Power Supply which will accept only a 110 volt power line input. These are not equipped with the voltage selector switch on the back of the supply.

THE APPLE II PLUS

The **Apple II Plus** is a standard Apple II computer with a Revision 1 board, an Autostart Monitor ROM, and the Applesoft II BASIC language in ROM in lieu of Apple Integer BASIC. European models of the Apple II Plus are equipped with a 110/220 volt power supply. The Apple Mini-Assembler, the Floating-Point Package, and the SWEET-16 interpreter, stored in the Integer BASIC ROMs, are not available on the Apple II Plus.



CHAPTER 2

CONVERSATION WITH APPLES

- 30 STANDARD OUTPUT
- 30 THE STOP-LIST FEATURE
- 31 BUT SOFT, WHAT LIGHT THROUGH YONDER WINDOW BREAKS!
(OR, THE TEXT WINDOW)
- 32 SEEING IT ALL IN BLACK AND WHITE
- 32 STANDARD INPUT
- 32 RDKEY
- 33 GETLN
- 34 ESCAPE CODES
- 36 THE RESET CYCLE
- 36 AUTOSTART ROM RESET
- 37 AUTOSTART ROM SPECIAL LOCATIONS
- 38 "OLD MONITOR" ROM RESET

Almost every program and language on the Apple needs some sort of input from the keyboard, and some way to print information on the screen. There is a set of subroutines stored in the Apple's ROM memory which handle most of the standard input and output from all programs and languages on the Apple.

The subroutines in the Apple's ROM which perform these input and output functions are called by various names. These names were given to the subroutines by their authors when they were written. The Apple itself does not recognize or remember the names of its own machine language subroutines, but it's convenient for us to call these subroutines by their given names.

STANDARD OUTPUT

The standard output subroutine is called COUT. COUT will display upper-case letters, numbers, and symbols on the screen in either Normal or Inverse mode. It will ignore control characters except RETURN, the bell character, the line feed character, and the backspace character.

The COUT subroutine maintains its own invisible "output cursor"** (the position at which the next character is to be placed). Each time COUT is called, it places one character on the screen at the current cursor position, replacing whatever character was there, and moves the cursor one space to the right. If the cursor is bumped off the right edge of the screen, then COUT shifts the cursor down to the first position on the next line. If the cursor passes the bottom line of the screen, the screen "scrolls" up one line and the cursor is set to the first position on the newly blank bottom line.

When a RETURN character is sent to COUT, it moves the cursor to the first position of the next line. If the cursor falls off the bottom of the screen, the screen scrolls as described above.

THE STOP-LIST FEATURE

When any program or language sends a RETURN code to COUT, COUT will take a quick peek at the keyboard. If you have typed a **CTRL S** since the last time COUT looked at the keyboard, then it will stop and wait for you to press another key. This is called the *Stop-List* feature.** When you press another key, COUT will then output the RETURN code and proceed with normal output. The code of the key which you press to end the Stop-List mode is ignored unless it is a **CTRL C**. If it is, then COUT passes this character code back to the program or language which is sending output. This allows you to terminate a BASIC program or listing by typing **CTRL C** while you are in Stop-List mode.

A line feed character causes COUT to move its mythical output cursor down one line without any horizontal motion at all. As always, moving beyond the bottom of the screen causes the screen to scroll and the cursor remains at its same position on a fresh bottom line.

A backspace character moves the imaginary cursor one space to the left. If the cursor is bumped off the left edge, it is reset to the rightmost position on the previous line. If there is no previous line (if the cursor was at the top of the screen), the screen does *not* scroll downwards, but instead

* From latin *cursor*, "runner"

** The Stop-list feature is not present on Apples without the Autostart ROM.

the cursor is placed again at the rightmost position on the top line of the screen.

When COUT is sent a "bell" character (CTRL G), it does not change the screen at all, but instead produces a tone from the speaker. The tone has a frequency of 100Hz and lasts for 1/10th of a second. The output cursor does not move for a bell character.

BUT SOFT, WHAT LIGHT THROUGH YONDER WINDOW BREAKS!

(OR, THE TEXT WINDOW)

In the above discussions of the various motions of the output cursor, the words "right", "left", "top", and "bottom" mean the physical right, left, top, and bottom of the standard 40-character wide by 24-line tall screen. There is, however, a way to tell the COUT subroutine that you want it to use only a section of the screen, and not the entire 960-character display. This segregated section of the text screen is called a "window". A program or language can set the positions of the top, bottom, left side, and width of the text window by storing those positions in four locations in memory. When this is done, the COUT subroutine will use the new positions to calculate the size of the screen. It will never print any text outside of this window, and when it must scroll the screen, it will only scroll the text within the window. This gives programs the power to control the placement of text, and to protect areas of the screen from being overwritten with new text.

Location number 32 (hexadecimal \$20) in memory holds the column position of the leftmost column in the window. This position is normally position 0 for the extreme left side of the screen. This number should never exceed 39 (hexadecimal \$27), the leftmost column on the text screen. Location number 33 (hexadecimal \$21) holds the width, in columns, of the cursor window. This number is normally 40 (hexadecimal \$28) for a full 40-character screen. Be careful that the sum of the window width and the leftmost window position does not exceed 40! If it does, it is possible for COUT to place characters in memory locations not on the screen, endangering your programs and data.

Location 34 (hexadecimal \$22) contains the number of the top line of the text window. This is also normally 0, indicating the topmost line of the display. Location 35 (hexadecimal \$23) holds the number of the bottom line of the screen (plus one), thus normally 24 (hexadecimal \$18) for the bottommost line of the screen. When you change the text window, you should take care that you know the whereabouts of the output cursor, and that it will be inside the new window.

Table 11: Text Window Special Locations

Function:	Location: Decimal	Location: Hex	Minimum/Normal/Maximum Value Decimal	Hex
Left Edge	32	\$20	0/0/39	\$0/\$0/\$17
Width	33	\$21	0/40/40	\$0/\$28/\$28
Top Edge	34	\$22	0/0/24	\$0/\$0/\$18
Bottom Edge	35	\$23	0/24/24	\$0/\$18/\$18

SEEING IT ALL IN BLACK AND WHITE

The COUT subroutine has the power to print what's sent to it in either Normal or Inverse text modes (see page 14). The particular form of its output is determined by the contents of location number 50 (hexadecimal \$32). If this location contains the value 255 (hexadecimal \$FF), then COUT will print characters in Normal mode; if the value is 63 (hexadecimal \$3F), then COUT will present its display in Inverse mode. Note that this mode change only affects the characters printed after the change has been made. Other values, when stored in location 50, do unusual things: the value 127 prints letters in Flashing mode, but all other characters in Inverse; any other value in location 50 will cause COUT to ignore some or all of its normal character set.

Table 12: Normal/Inverse Control Values

Value:	Effect:	
Decimal	Hex	
255	\$FF	COUT will display characters in Normal mode.
63	\$3F	COUT will display characters in Inverse mode.
127	\$7F	COUT will display letters in Flashing mode, all other characters in Inverse mode.

The Normal/Inverse "mask" location, as it is called, works by performing a logical "AND" between the bits contained in location 50 and the bits in each outgoing character code. Every bit in location 50 which is a logical "zero" will force the corresponding bit in the character code to become "zero" also, regardless of its former setting. Thus, when location 50 contains 63 (hexadecimal \$3F or binary 00111111), the top two bits of every output character code will be turned "off". This will place characters on the screen whose codes are all between 0 and 63. As you can see from the ASCII Screen Character Code table (Table 7 on page 15), all of these characters are in Inverse mode.

STANDARD INPUT

There are actually two subroutines which are concerned with the gathering of standard input: RDKEY, which fetches a single keystroke from the keyboard, and GETLN, which accumulates a number of keystrokes into a chunk of information called an *input line*.

RDKEY

The primary function of the RDKEY subroutine is to wait for the user to press a key on the keyboard, and then report back to the program which called it with the code for the key which was pressed. But while it does this, RDKEY also performs two other helpful tasks:

- 1). *Input Prompting.* When RDKEY is activated, the first thing it does is make visible the hidden output cursor. This accomplishes two things: it reminds the user that the Apple is waiting for a key to be pressed, and it also associates the input it wants with a particular place on the screen. In most cases, the input prompt appears near a word or phrase describing what is being requested by the particular program or language currently in use. The input cursor itself is a flashing representation of whatever character was at the position of the output cursor. Usually this is the blank character, so the input cursor most often appears to be a flashing square.

When the user presses a key, RDKEY dutifully removes the input cursor and returns the value of the key which was pressed to the program which requested it. Remember that the output cursor is just a position on the screen, but the input cursor is a flashing character on the screen. They usually move in tandem and are rarely separated from each other, but when the input cursor disappears, the output cursor is still active.

- 2). *Random Number Seeding.* While it waits for the user to press a key, RDKEY is continually adding 1 to a pair of numbers in memory. When a key is finally pressed, these two locations together represent a number from 0 to 65,535, the exact value of which is quite unpredictable. Many programs and languages use this number as the base of a random number generator. The two locations which are randomized during RDKEY are numbers 78 and 79 (hexadecimal \$4E and \$4F).

GETLN

The vast majority of input to the Apple is gathered into chunks called *input lines*. The subroutine in the Apple's ROM called GETLN requests an input line from the keyboard, and after getting one, returns to the program which called it. GETLN has many features and nuances, and it is good to be familiar with the services it offers.

When called, GETLN first prints a *prompting character*, or "prompt". The prompt helps you to identify which program has called GETLN requesting input. A prompt character of an asterisk (*) represents the System Monitor, a right caret (>) indicates Apple Integer BASIC, a right bracket (]) is the prompt for Applesoft II BASIC, and an exclamation point (!) is the hallmark of the Apple Mini-Assembler. In addition, the question-mark prompt (?) is used by many programs and languages to indicate that a user program is requesting input. From your (the user's) point of view, the Apple simply prints a prompt and displays an input cursor. As you type, the characters you type are printed on the screen and the cursor moves accordingly. When you press **RETURN**, the entire line is sent off to the program or language you are talking to, and you get another prompt.

Actually, what really happens is that after the prompt is printed, GETLN calls RDKEY, which displays an input cursor. When RDKEY returns with a keycode, GETLN stores that keycode in an *input buffer* and prints it on the screen where the input cursor was. It then calls RDKEY again. This continues until the user presses **RETURN**. When GETLN receives a RETURN code from the keyboard, it sticks the RETURN code at the end of the input buffer, clears the remainder of the screen line the input cursor was on, and sends the RETURN code to COUT (see above). GETLN then returns to the program which called it. The program or language which requested input may now look at the entire line, all at once, as saved in the input buffer.

At any time while you are typing a line, you can type a **CTRL X** and cancel that entire line. GETLN will simply forget everything you have typed, print a backslash (\), skip to a new line, and display another prompt, allowing you to retype the line. Also, GETLN can handle a maximum of 255 characters in a line. If you exceed this limit, GETLN will cancel the entire line and you must start over. To warn you that you are approaching the limit, GETLN will sound a tone every keypress starting with the 249th character.

GETLN also allows you to edit and modify the line you are typing in order to correct simple typographical errors. A quick introduction to the standard editing functions and the use of the two arrow keys, **[←]** and **[→]**, appears on pages 28-29 and 53-55 of the **Apple II BASIC Programming Manual**, or on pages 27-28, 52-53 and Appendix C of **The Applesoft Tutorial**, at least one

of which you should have received. Here is a short description of GETLN's editing features:

THE BACKSPACE (⊖) KEY

Each press of the backspace key makes GETLN "forget" one previous character in the input line. It also sends a backspace character to COUT (see above), making the cursor move back to the character which was deleted. At this point, a character typed on the keyboard will replace the deleted character both on the screen and in the input line. Multiple backspaces will delete successive characters; however, if you backspace over more characters than you have typed, GETLN will forget the entire line and issue another prompt.

THE RETYPE (⊖) KEY

Pressing the retype key has exactly the same effect as typing the character which is under the cursor. This is extremely useful for re-entering the remainder of a line which you have backspaced over to correct a typographical error. In conjunction with *pure cursor moves* (which follow), it is also useful for recopying and editing data which is already on the screen.

ESCAPE CODES

When you press the key marked [ESC] on the keyboard, the Apple's input subroutines go into *escape mode*. In this mode, eleven keys have separate meanings, called "escape codes". When you press one of these eleven keys, the Apple will perform the function associated with that key. After it has performed the function, the Apple will either continue or terminate escape mode, depending upon which escape code was performed. If you press any key in escape mode which is not an escape code, then that keypress will be ignored and escape mode will be terminated.

The Apple recognizes eleven escape codes, eight of which are *pure cursor moves*, which simply move the cursor without altering the screen or the input line, and three of which are *screen clear codes*, which simply blank part or all of the screen. All of the screen clear codes and the first four pure cursor moves (escape codes @, A, B, C, D, E, and F) terminate the escape mode after operating. The final four escape codes (I, K, M, and J) complete their functions with escape mode active.*

[ESC] [A] A press of the [ESC] key followed by a press of the [A] key will move the cursor one space to the right without changing the input line. This is useful for skipping over unwanted characters in an input line: simply backspace back over the unwanted characters, press [ESC] [A] to skip each offending symbol, and use the retype key to re-enter the remainder of the line.

[ESC] [B] Pressing [ESC] followed by [B] moves the cursor back one space, also without disturbing the input line. This may be used to enter something twice on the same line without retyping it: just type it once, press [ESC] [B] repeatedly to get back to the beginning of the phrase, and use the retype key to enter it again.

* These four escape codes are not available on Apples without the Autostart Monitor ROM.

[ESC] C The key sequence **[ESC] C** moves the cursor one line directly down, with no horizontal movement. If the cursor reaches the bottom of the text window, then the cursor remains on the bottom line and the text in the window scrolls up one line. The input line is not modified by the **[ESC] C** sequence. This, and **[ESC] D** (below), are useful for positioning the cursor at the beginning of another line on the screen, so that it may be re-entered with the retype key.

[ESC] D The **[ESC] D** sequence moves the cursor directly up one line, again without any horizontal movement. If the cursor reaches the top of the window, it stays there. The input line remains unmodified. This sequence is useful for moving the cursor to a previous line on the screen so that it may be re-entered with the retype key.

[ESC] E The **[ESC] E** sequence is called "clear to end of line". When COUT detects this sequence of keypresses, it clears the remainder of the screen line (*not* the input line!) from the cursor position to the right edge of the text window. The cursor remains where it is, and the input line is unmodified. **[ESC] E** always clears the rest of the line to blank spaces, regardless of the setting of the Normal/Inverse mode location (see above).

[ESC] F This sequence is called "clear to end of screen". It does just that: it clears everything in the window below or to the right of the cursor. As before, the cursor does not move and the input line is not modified. This is useful for erasing random garbage on a cluttered screen after a lot of cursor moves and editing.

[ESC] @ The **[ESC] @** sequence is called "home and clear". It clears the entire window and places the cursor in the upper left-hand corner. The screen is cleared to blank spaces, regardless of the setting of the Normal/Inverse location, and the input line is not changed (note that "**@**" is **SHIFT P**).

[ESC] K These four escape codes are synonyms for the four pure cursor moves given above.
[ESC] J When these four escape codes finish their respective functions, they do *not* turn off the
[ESC] M escape mode: you can continue typing these escape codes and moving the cursor around
[ESC] I the screen until you press any key other than another escape code. These four keys are placed in a "directional keypad" arrangement, so that the direction of each key from the center of the keypad corresponds to the direction which that escape code moves the cursor.

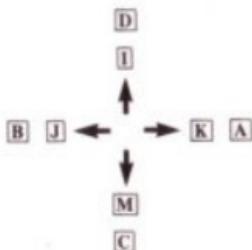


Figure 4. Cursor-moving Escape Codes.

THE RESET CYCLE

When you turn your Apple's power switch on* or press and release the [RESET] key, the Apple's 6502 microprocessor initiates a RESET cycle. It begins by jumping into a subroutine in the Apple's Monitor ROM. In the two different versions of this ROM, the Monitor ROM and the Autostart ROM, the RESET cycle does very different things.

AUTOSTART ROM RESET

Apples with the Autostart ROM begin their RESET cycles by flipping the soft switches which control the video screen to display the full primary page of Text mode, with Low-Resolution Graphics mixed mode lurking behind the veil of text. It then opens the text window to its full size, drops the output cursor to the bottom of the screen, and sets Normal video mode. Then it sets the COUT and KEYIN switches to use the Apple's internal keyboard and video display as the standard input and output devices. It flips annunciators 0 and 1 ON and annunciators 2 and 3 OFF on the Game I/O connector, clears the keyboard strobe, turns off any active I/O Expansion ROM (see page 84), and sounds a "beep!".

These actions are performed every time you press and release the [RESET] key on your Apple. At this point, the Autostart ROM peeks into two special locations in memory to see if it's been RESET before or if the Apple has just been powered up (these special locations are described below). If the Apple has just been turned on, then the Autostart ROM performs a "cold start"; otherwise, it does a "warm start".

1) **Cold Start.** On a freshly activated Apple, the RESET cycle continues by clearing the screen and displaying "APPLE II" top and center. It then sets up the special locations in memory to tell itself that it's been powered up and RESET. Then it starts looking through the rightmost seven slots in your Apple's backplane, looking for a Disk II Controller Card. It starts the search with Slot 7 and continues down to Slot 1. If it finds a disk controller card, then it proceeds to bootstrap the Apple Disk Operating System (DOS) from the diskette in the disk drive attached to the controller card it discovered. You can find a description of the disk bootstrapping procedure in **Do's and Don'ts of DOS**, Apple part number A2L0012, page 11.

If the Autostart ROM cannot find a Disk II controller card, or you press [RESET] again before the disk booting procedure has completed, then the RESET cycle will continue with a "lukewarm start". It will initialize and jump into the language which is installed in ROM on your Apple. For a Revision 0 Apple, either without an Applesoft II Firmware card or with such a card with its controlling switch in the DOWN position, the Autostart ROM will start Apple Integer BASIC. For Apple II-Plus systems, or Revision 0 Apple IIs with the Applesoft II Firmware card with the switch in the UP position, the Autostart ROM will begin Applesoft II Floating-Point BASIC.

2) **Warm Start.** If you have an Autostart ROM which has already performed a cold start cycle, then each time you press and release the [RESET] key, you will be returned to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

* Power-on RESET cycles occur only on Revision 1 Apples or Revision 0 Apples with at least one Disk II controller card.

AUTOSTART ROM SPECIAL LOCATIONS

The three "special locations" used by the Autostart ROM all reside in an area of RAM memory reserved for such system functions. Following is a table of the special locations used by the Autostart ROM:

Table 13: Autostart ROM Special Locations

Location:	Decimal	Hex	Contents:
1010	\$3F2		Soft Entry Vector. These two locations contain the address of the reentry point for whatever language is in use. Normally contains \$E003.
1011	\$3F3		
1012	\$3F4		Power-Up Byte. Normally contains \$45. See below.
64367 (-1169)	\$FB6F		This is the beginning of a machine language subroutine which sets up the power-up location.

When the Apple is powered up, the Autostart ROM places a special value in the power-up location. This value is the Exclusive-OR of the value contained in location 1011 with the constant value 165. For example, if location 1011 contains 224 (its normal value), then the power-up value will be:

	Decimal	Hex	Binary
Location 1011	224	\$E0	11100000
Constant	165	\$A5	10100101
Power-Up Value	69	\$45	01000101

Your programs can change the soft entry vector, so that when you press [RESET] you will go to some program other than a language. If you change this soft entry vector, however, you should make sure that you set the value of the power-up byte to the Exclusive-OR of the high part of your new soft entry vector with the constant decimal 165 (hexadecimal \$A5). If you do not set this power-up value, then the next time you press [RESET] the Autostart ROM will believe that the Apple has just been turned on and it will do another cold start.

For example, you can change the soft entry vector to point to the Apple System Monitor, so that when you press [RESET] you will be placed into the Monitor. To make this change, you must place the address of the beginning of the Monitor into the two soft entry vector locations. The Monitor begins at location SFF69, or decimal 65385. Put the last two hexadecimal digits of this address (\$69) into location \$3F2 and the first two digits (SFF) into location \$3F3. If you are working in decimal, put 105 (which is the remainder of 65385/256) into location 1010 and the value 255 (which is the integer quotient of 65385/256) into location 1011.

Now you must set up the power-up location. There is a machine-language subroutine in the Autostart ROM which will automatically set the value of this location to the Exclusive-OR mentioned above. All you need to do is to execute a JSR (Jump to SubRoutine) instruction to the address \$FB6F. If you are working in BASIC, you should perform a CALL -1169. Now everything is set, and the next time you press [RESET], you will enter the System Monitor.

To make the [RESET] key work in its usual way, just restore the values in the soft entry vector to their former values (\$E003, or decimal 57347) and again call the subroutine described above.

"OLD MONITOR" ROM RESET

A RESET cycle in the Apple II Monitor ROM begins by setting Normal video mode, a full screen of Primary Page text with the Color Graphics mixed mode behind it, a fully-opened text window, and the Apple's standard keyboard and video screen as the standard input and output devices. It sounds a "beep!", the cursor leaps to the bottom line of the uncleared text screen, and you find yourself facing an asterisk (*) prompt and talking to the Apple System Monitor.

CHAPTER 3

THE SYSTEM MONITOR

- 40 ENTERING THE MONITOR
- 40 ADDRESSES AND DATA
- 41 EXAMINING THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY
- 41 EXAMINING SOME MORE MEMORY
- 43 EXAMINING STILL MORE MEMORY
- 43 CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF A LOCATION
- 44 CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF CONSECUTIVE LOCATIONS
- 44 MOVING A RANGE OF MEMORY
- 46 COMPARING TWO RANGES OF MEMORY
- 46 SAVING A RANGE OF MEMORY ON TAPE
- 47 READING A RANGE FROM TAPE
- 48 CREATING AND RUNNING MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAMS
- 49 THE MINI-ASSEMBLER
- 51 DEBUGGING PROGRAMS
- 53 EXAMINING AND CHANGING REGISTERS
- 54 MISCELLANEOUS MONITOR COMMANDS
- 55 SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR
- 57 CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS
- 59 SUMMARY OF MONITOR COMMANDS
- 61 SOME USEFUL MONITOR SUBROUTINES
- 65 MONITOR SPECIAL LOCATIONS
- 66 MINI-ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION FORMATS

Buried deep within the recesses of the Apple's ROM is a masterful program called the System Monitor. It acts as both a supervisor of the system and a slave to it; it controls all programs and all programs use it. You can use the powerful features of the System Monitor to discover the hidden secrets in all 65,536 memory locations. From the Monitor, you may look at one, some, or all locations; you may change the contents of any location; you can write programs in Machine and Assembly languages to be executed directly by the Apple's microprocessor; you can save vast quantities of data and programs onto cassette tape and read them back in again; you can move and compare thousands of bytes of memory with a single command; and you can leave the Monitor and enter any other program or language on the Apple.

ENTERING THE MONITOR

The Apple System Monitor program begins at location number \$FF69 (decimal 65385 or -151) in memory. To enter the Monitor, you or your BASIC program can CALL this location. The Monitor's prompt (an asterisk [*]) will appear on the left edge of the screen, with a flashing cursor to its right. The Monitor accepts standard input lines (see page 32) just like any other system or language on the Apple. It will not take any action until you press [RETURN]. Your input lines to the Monitor may be up to 255 characters in length. When you have finished your stay in the Monitor, you can return to the language you were previously using by typing [CTRL C] [RETURN] (or, with the Apple DOS, [3] [D] [#] [G] [RETURN]), or simply press [RESET].*

ADDRESSES AND DATA

Talking to the Monitor is somewhat like talking to any other program or language on the Apple: you type a line on the keyboard, followed by a [RETURN], and the Monitor will digest what you typed and act according to those instructions. You will be giving the Monitor three types of information: *addresses*, *values*, and *commands*. Addresses and values are given to the Monitor in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal notation uses the ten decimal digits (0-9) to represent themselves and the first six letters (A-F) to represent the numbers 10 through 15. A single hexadecimal digit can, therefore, have one of sixteen values from 0 to 15. A pair of hex digits can assume any value from 0 to 255, and a group of four hex digits can denote any number from 0 to 65,536. It so happens that any address in the Apple can be represented by four hex digits, and any value by two hex digits. This is how you tell the Monitor about addresses and values. When the Monitor is looking for an address, it will take any group of hex digits. If there are fewer than four digits in the group, it will prepend leading zeroes; if there are more than four hex digits, the Monitor will truncate the group and use only the last four hex digits. It follows the same procedure when looking for two-digit data values.

The Monitor recognizes 22 different command characters. Some of these are punctuation marks, others are upper-case letters or control characters. In the following sections, the full name of a command will appear in capital letters. The Monitor needs only the first letter of the command name. Some commands are invoked with control characters. You should note that although the Monitor recognizes and interprets these characters, a control character typed on an input line will *not* appear on the screen.

* This does not work on Apples without the Autostart ROM.

The Monitor remembers the addresses of up to five locations. Two of these are special: they are the addresses of the last location whose value you inquired about, and the location which is next to have its value changed. These are called the *last opened location* and the *next changeable location*. The usefulness of these two addresses will be revealed shortly.

EXAMINING THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY

When you type the address of a location in memory alone on an input line to the Monitor, it will reply* with the address you typed, a dash, a space, and the value** contained in that location, thus:

```
* E000
E000- 20
* 300
#300- 99
*
```

Each time the Monitor displays the value contained in a location, it remembers that location as the *last opened location*. For technical reasons, it also considers that location as the *next changeable location*.

EXAMINING SOME MORE MEMORY

If you type a period(.) on an input line to the Monitor, followed by an address, the Monitor will display a *memory dump*: the values contained in all locations from the last opened location to the location whose address you typed following the period. The Monitor then considers the last location displayed to be both the last opened location and the next changeable location.

* In the examples, your queries are in normal type and the Apple replies in **boldface**.

** The values printed in these examples may differ from the values displayed by your Apple for the same instructions.

* 20

#020- #0

* .2B

#021- 28 #0 18 #F BC #0 #0

#028- A8 #6 D# #7

* 300

#3#0- 99

* .315

#3#1- B9 #0 #8 #A #A #A 99

#3#8- #0 #8 C8 D# F4 A6 2B A9

#31#- #9 85 27 AD CC #3

* .32A

#316- 85 41

#318- 84 4# 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A #9

#32#- C# 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 2#

#328- 43 #3 2#

*

You should notice several things about the format of a memory dump. First, the first line in the dump begins with the address of the location *following* the last opened location; second, all other lines begin with addresses which end alternately in zeroes and eights; and third, there are never more than eight values displayed on a single line in a memory dump. When the Monitor does a memory dump, it starts by displaying the address and value of the location following the last opened location. It then proceeds to the next successive location in memory. If the address of that location ends in an 8 or a 0, the Monitor will "cut" to a new line and display the address of that location and continue displaying values. After it has displayed the value of the location whose address you specified, it stops the memory dump and sets the address of both the last opened and the next changeable location to be the address of the last location in the dump. If the address specified on the input line is less than the address of the last opened location, the Monitor will display the address and value of only the location following the last opened location.

You can combine the two commands (opening and dumping) into one operation by concatenating the second to the first; that is, type the first address, followed by a period and the second address. This two-addresses-separated-by-a-period form is called a *memory range*.

* 3#0 . 32F

#3#0- 99 B9 #0 #8 #A #A #A 99

#3#8- #0 #8 C8 D# F4 A6 2B A9

#31#- #9 85 27 AD CC #3 85 41

#318- 84 4# 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A #9

#32#- C# 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 2#

#328- 43 #3 2# 46 #3 A5 3D 4D

* 3#0 . 4#

##3#- AA #0 FF AA #5 C2 #5 C2

##38- 1B FD D# #3 3C #0 4# #0

##4#- 3#

* E#15 . E#25

E#15- 4C ED FD
E#18- A9 2# C5 24 B# 8C A9 8D
E#2#- A# 87 2# ED FD A9
*

EXAMINING STILL MORE MEMORY

A single press of the [RETURN] key will cause the Monitor to respond with one line of a memory dump; that is, a memory dump from the location following the last opened location to the next eight-location "cut". Once again, the last location displayed is considered the last opened and next changeable location.

```
* 5  
# # # 5 - # #  
* [RETURN]  
# # #  
* [RETURN]  
  
# # # 8 - # # # # # # # # # #  
* 32  
  
# # 32 - FF  
* [RETURN]  
AA # # C2 # 5 C2  
* [RETURN]  
  
# # 38 - 1B FD D# # 3 3C # # 3F # #
```

CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF A LOCATION

You've heard all about the "next changeable location"; now you're going to use it. Type a colon followed by a value.

• 8

Presto! The contents of the next changeable location have just been changed to the value you typed. Check this by examining that location again:

• ①
888—5F

You can also combine opening and changing into one operation:

*3#2:42

*3#2

#3#2— 42

*

When you change the contents of a location, the old value which was contained in that location disappears, never to be seen again. The new value will stick around until it is replaced by another hexadecimal value.

CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF CONSECUTIVE LOCATIONS

You *don't* have to type an address, a colon, a value, and press **RETURN** for each and every location you wish to change. The Monitor will allow you to change the values of up to eighty-five locations at a time by typing only the initial address and colon, and then all the values separated by spaces. The Monitor will duly file the consecutive values in consecutive locations, starting at the next changeable location. After it has processed the string of values, it will assume that the location following the last changed location is the next changeable location. Thus, you can continue changing consecutive locations without breaking stride on the next input line by typing another colon and more values.

*3#0:69 01 20 ED FD 4C # 3

*3#0

#3#0— 69

***RETURN**

01 20 ED FD 4C #0 #3

*1#0:0 1 2 3

*:4 5 6 7

*1#0.17

#01#0— #0 #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6 #7

*

MOVING A RANGE OF MEMORY

You can treat a range of memory (specified by two addresses separated by a period) as an entity

unto itself and move it from one place to another in memory by using the Monitor's MOVE command. In order to move a range of memory from one place to another, the Monitor must be told both where the range is situated in memory and where it is to be moved. You give this information to the Monitor in three parts: the address of the destination of the range, the address of the first location in the range proper, and the address of the last location in the range. You specify the starting and ending addresses of the range in the normal fashion, by separating them with a period. You indicate that this range is to be placed somewhere else by separating the range and the destination address with a left caret (<). Finally, you tell the Monitor that you want to move the range to the destination by typing the letter M, for "MOVE". The final command looks like this:

```
{destination} < {start} . {end} M
```

When you type this line to the Monitor, of course, the words in curly brackets should be replaced by hexadecimal addresses and the spaces should be omitted. Here are some real examples of memory moves:

```
*0.F  
0000- 5F #0 #5 #7 #0 #0 #0 #0  
0008- #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0  
*300:A9 8D 2# ED FD A9 45 2# DA FD 4C #0 #3  
  
*300.30C  
  
#300- A9 8D 2# ED FD A9 45 2#  
#308- DA FD 4C #0 #3  
*0<300.30CM  
  
*0.C  
  
0000- A9 8D 2# ED FD A9 45 2#  
0008- DA FD 4C #0 #3  
*310<8.AM  
  
*310.312  
  
#310- DA FD 4C  
*2<7.9M  
  
*0.C  
  
#000- A9 8D 2# DA FD A9 45 2#  
#008- DA FD 4C #0 #3  
*
```

The Monitor simply makes a copy of the indicated range and moves it to the specified destination. The original range is left undisturbed. The Monitor remembers the last location in the original range as the last opened location, and the first location in the original range as the next changeable location. If the second address in the range specification is less than the first, then only one value (that of the first location in the range) will be moved.

If the destination address of the MOVE command is inside the original range, then strange and (sometimes) wonderful things happen: the locations between the beginning of the range and the

destination are treated as a sub-range and the values in this sub-range are replicated throughout the original range. See "Special Tricks", page 55, for an interesting application of this feature.

COMPARING TWO RANGES OF MEMORY

You can use the Monitor to compare two ranges of memory using much the same format as you use to move a range of memory from one place to another. In fact, the VERIFY command can be used immediately after a MOVE to make sure that the move was successful.

The VERIFY command, like the MOVE command, needs a range and a destination. In short-hand:

```
{destination} < {start} . {end} V
```

The Monitor compares the range specified with the range beginning at the destination address. If there is any discrepancy, the Monitor displays the address at which the difference was found and the two offending values.

```
*@:D7 F2 E9 F4 F4 E5 EE A@ E2 F9 A@ C3 C4 C5  
• 3@<@ . DM  
• 3@<@ . DV  
• 6 : E4  
• 3@<@ . DV  
###6-E4 (EE)  
*
```

Notice that the VERIFY command, if it finds a discrepancy, displays the address of the location in the original range whose value differs from its counterpart in the destination range. If there is no discrepancy, VERIFY displays nothing. It leaves both ranges unchanged. The last opened and next changeable locations are set just as in the MOVE command. As before, if the ending address of the range is less than the starting address, the values of only the first locations in the ranges will be compared. VERIFY also does unusual things if the destination is within the original range; see "Special Tricks", page 55.

SAVING A RANGE OF MEMORY ON TAPE

The Monitor has two special commands which allow you to save a range of memory onto cassette tape and recall it again for later use. The first of these two commands, WRITE, lets you save the contents of one to 65,536 memory locations on standard cassette tape.

To save a range of memory to tape, give the Monitor the starting and ending addresses of the range, followed by the letter W (for WRITE):

[start] . [end] W

To get an accurate recording, you should put the tape recorder in *record* mode before you press **RETURN** on the input line. Let the tape run a few seconds, then press **RETURN**. The Monitor will write a ten-second "leader" tone onto the tape, followed by the data. When the Monitor is finished, it will sound a "beep!" and give you another prompt. You should then rewind the tape, and label the tape with something intelligible about the memory range that's on the tape and what it's supposed to be.

```
* @. FF FF AD 3@ C@ 88 D@ @4 C6 @1 F@ @8 C |  
A D@ F6 A6 @8 4C @2 @8 6@
```

```
* @. 14
```

```
F###- FF FF AD 3@ C@ 88 D@ @4  
@##8- C6 @1 F@ @8 CA D@ F6 A6  
@#1@- @@ 4C @2 @8 6@  
* @. 14W
```

```
*
```

It takes about 35 seconds total to save the values of 4,096 memory locations preceded by the ten-second leader onto tape. This works out to a speed of about 1,350 bits per second, average. The WRITE command writes one extra value on the tape after it has written the values in the memory range. This extra value is the *checksum*. It is the partial sum of all values in the range. The READ subroutine uses this value to determine if a READ has been successful (see below).

READING A RANGE FROM TAPE

Once you've saved a memory range onto tape with the Monitor's WRITE command, you can read that memory range back into the Apple by using the Monitor's READ command. The data values which you've stored on the tape need not be read back into the same memory range from whence they came; you can tell the Monitor to put those values into any similarly sized memory range in the Apple's memory.

The format of the READ command is the same as that of the WRITE command, except that the command letter is R, not W:

[start] . [end] R

Once again, after typing the command, don't press **RETURN**. Instead, start the tape recorder in PLAY mode and wait for the tape's nonmagnetic leader to pass by. Although the WRITE command puts a ten-second leader tone on the beginning of the tape, the READ command needs only three seconds of this leader in order to lock on to the frequency. So you should let a few seconds of tape go by before you press **RETURN**, to allow the tape recorder's output to settle down to a steady tone.

```
* @. @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ @ |  
@ @
```

```
* @. 14
```

```
#0#0- #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0  
#0#8- #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0  
#0#1#- #0 #0 #0 #0 #0  
* #0 . 14R
```

```
* #0 . 14
```

```
#0#0- FF FF AD 3# C# 88 D# #4  
#0#8- C6 #1 F# #8 CA D# F6 A6  
#0#1#- #0 4C #2 #0 #0  
*
```

After the Monitor has read in and stored all the values on the tape, it reads in the extra checksum value. It compares the checksum on the tape to its own checksum, and if the two differ, the Monitor beeps the speaker and displays "ERR". This warns you that there was a problem during the READ and that the values stored in memory aren't the values which were recorded on the tape. If, however, the two checksums match, the Monitor will give you another prompt.

CREATING AND RUNNING MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAMS

Machine language is certainly the most efficient language on the Apple, albeit the least pleasant in which to code. The Monitor has special facilities for those of you who are determined to use machine language to simplify creating, writing, and debugging machine language programs.

You can write a machine language program, take the hexadecimal values for the opcodes and operands, and store them in memory using the commands covered above. You can get a hexadecimal dump of your program, move it around in memory, or save it to tape and recall it again simply by using the commands you've already learned. The most important command, however, when dealing with machine language programs is the GO command. When you open a location from the Monitor and type the letter G, the Monitor will cause the 6502 microprocessor to start executing the machine language program which begins at the last opened location. The Monitor treats this program as a subroutine: when it's finished, all it need do is execute an RTS (return from subroutine) instruction and control will be transferred back to the Monitor.

Your machine language programs can call many subroutines in the Monitor to do various things. Here is an example of loading and running a machine language program to display the letters A through Z:

```
* 3#0:A9 C1 2# ED FD 18 69 1 C9 DB D# F6 6#  
* 3#0 . 3#C  
#3#0- A9 C1 2# ED FD 18 69 #1  
#3#8- C9 DB D# F6 6#  
* 3#0G  
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTUVWXYZ  
*
```

(The instruction set of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor is listed in Appendix A of this manual.)

Now, straight hexadecimal code isn't the easiest thing in the world to read or debug. With this in mind, the creators of the Apple's Monitor neatly included a command to list machine language programs in *assembly language* form. This means that instead of having one, two, or three bytes of unformatted hexadecimal gibberish per instruction you now have a three-letter mnemonic and some formatted hexadecimal gibberish to comprehend for each instruction. The LIST command to the Monitor will start at the specified location and display a screenfull (20 lines) of instructions:

```
* 300L.  
#3#0- A9 C1      LDA    #$C1  
#3#2- 2# ED FD    JSR    $FDED  
#3#5- 18          CLC  
#3#6- 69 #1      ADC    #$#1  
#3#8- C9 DB      CMP    #$DB  
#3#A- D# F6      BNE    $#3#2  
#3#C- ##          RTS  
#3#D- ##          BRK  
#3#E- ##          BRK  
#3#F- ##          BRK  
#31#- ##          BRK  
#311- ##          BRK  
#312- ##          BRK  
#313- ##          BRK  
#314- ##          BRK  
#315- ##          BRK  
#316- ##          BRK  
#317- ##          BRK  
#318- ##          BRK  
#319- ##          BRK  
*
```

Recognize those first few lines? They're the assembly language form of the program you typed in a page or so ago. The rest of the lines (the BRK instructions) are just there to fill up the screen. The address that you specify is remembered by the Monitor, but not in one of the ways explained before. It's put in the *Program Counter*, which is used solely to point to locations within programs. After a LIST command, the Program Counter is set to point to the location immediately following the last location displayed on the screen, so that if you do another LIST command it will continue with another screenfull of instructions, starting where the first screen left off.

THE MINI-ASSEMBLER

There is another program within the Monitor* which allows you to type programs into the Apple in the same assembly format which the LIST command displays. This program is called the Apple Mini-Assembler. It is a "mini"-assembler because it cannot understand symbolic labels, something that a full-blown assembler must do. To run the Mini-Assembler, type:

* The Mini-Assembler does not actually reside in the Monitor ROM, but is part of the Integer BASIC ROM set. Thus, it is not available on Apple II Plus systems or while Firmware Applesoft II is in use.

*F666G

!

You are now in the Mini-Assembler. The exclamation point (!) is the prompt character. During your stay in the Mini-Assembler, you can execute any Monitor command by preceding it with a dollar sign (\$). Aside from that, the Mini-Assembler has an instruction set and syntax all its own.

The Mini-Assembler remembers one address, that of the Program Counter. Before you start to enter a program, you must set the Program Counter to point to the location where you want your program to go. Do this by typing the address followed by a colon. Follow this with the mnemonic for the first instruction in your program, followed by a space. Now type the operand of the instruction (Formats for operands are listed on page 66). Now press **RETURN**. The Mini-Assembler converts the line you typed into hexadecimal, stores it in memory beginning at the location of the Program Counter, and then disassembles it again and displays the disassembled line on top of your input line. It then poses another prompt on the next line. Now it's ready to accept the second instruction in your program. To tell it that you want the next instruction to follow the first, don't type an address or a colon, but only a space, followed by the next instruction's mnemonic and operand. Press **RETURN**. It assembles that line and waits for another.

If the line you type has an error in it, the Mini-Assembler will beep loudly and display a circumflex (^) under or near the offending character in the input line. Most common errors are the result of typographical mistakes: misspelled mnemonics, missing parentheses, etc. The Mini-Assembler also will reject the input line if you forget the space before or after a mnemonic or include an extraneous character in a hexadecimal value or address. If the destination address of a branch instruction is out of the range of the branch (more than 127 locations distant from the address of the instruction), the Mini-Assembler will also flag this as an error.

```
!300:LDX #02
#300-A2 02      LDX    #$02
! LDA $0,X

#302-B5 00      LDA    $00,X
! STA $10,X

#304-95 10      STA    $10,X
! DEX

#306-CA         DEX

! STA SC#30

#307-8D 3# C#   STA    SC#3#
! BPL $302

#30A-1# F6      BPL    $#3#2

#30C-#          BRK
```

To exit the Mini-Assembler and re-enter the Monitor, either press **RESET** or type the Monitor

command (preceded by a dollar sign) FF69G:

```
!$FF69G
```

*

Your assembly language program is stored in memory. You can look at it again with the LIST command:

```
*300L
```

#3#0-	A2 #2	LDX	#\$#2
#3#2-	B5 #0	LDA	\$#0,X
#3#4-	95 1#	STA	\$1#,X
#3#6-	CA	DEX	
#3#7-	8D 3# C#	STA	\$C#3#
#3#A-	1# F6	BPL	\$#3#2
#3#C-	##	BRK	
#3#D-	##	BRK	
#3#E-	##	BRK	
#3#F-	##	BRK	
#31#-	##	BRK	
#311-	##	BRK	
#312-	##	BRK	
#313-	##	BRK	
#314-	##	BRK	
#315-	##	BRK	
#316-	##	BRK	
#317-	##	BRK	
#318-	##	BRK	
#319-	##	BRK	

*

DEBUGGING PROGRAMS

As put so concisely by Lubarsky*, "There's always one more bug." Don't worry, the Monitor provides facilities for stepping through ornery programs to find that one last bug. The Monitor's STEP** command decodes, displays, and executes one instruction at a time, and the TRACE** command steps quickly through a program, stopping when a BRK instruction is executed.

Each STEP command causes the Monitor to execute the instruction in memory pointed to by the Program Counter. The instruction is displayed in its disassembled form, then executed. The contents of the 6502's internal registers are displayed after the instruction is executed. After execution, the Program Counter is bumped up to point to the next instruction in the program.

Here's what happens when you STEP through the program you entered using the Mini-Assembler, above:

* In *Murphy's Law, and Other Reasons why Things Go Wrong*, edited by Arthur Bloch. Price/Stern/Sloane 1977.

** The STEP and TRACE commands are not available on Apples with the Autostart ROM.

*300S

```
#3#0- A2 #2          LDX    #$#2
A=#A X=#2 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#2- B5 ##          LDA    $##,X
A=#C X=#2 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#4- 95 1#          STA    $1#,X
A=#C X=#2 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*12

#3#6- CA             DEX
A=#C X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#7- 8D 3# C#      STA    SC#3#
A=#C X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#A- 1# F6          BPL    $#3#2
A=#C X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#2- B5 ##          LDA    $##,X
A=#B X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

#3#4- 95 1#          STA    $1#,X
A=#B X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*
```

Notice that after the third instruction was executed, we examined the contents of location 12. They were as we expected, and so we continued stepping. The Monitor keeps the Program Counter and the last opened address separate from one another, so that you can examine or change the contents of memory while you are stepping through your program.

The TRACE command is just an infinite STEPper. It will stop TRACEing the execution of a program only when you push **RESET** or it encounters a BRK instruction in the program. If the TRACE encounters the end of a program which returns to the Monitor via an RTS instruction, the TRACEing will run off into never-never land and must be stopped with the **RESET** button.

*T

```
#3#6- CA             DEX
A=#B X=## Y=D8 P=32 S=F8
#3#7- 8D 3# C#      STA    SC#3#
A=#B X=## Y=D8 P=32 S=F8
#3#A- 1# F6          BPL    $#3#2
```

```

A=#B X=## Y=D8 P=32 S=F8
#3#2- B5 ## LDA $##,X
A=#A X=## Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
#3#4- 95 1# STA $1#,X
A=#A X=## Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
#3#6- CA DEX
A=#A X=FF Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
#3#7- 8D 3# C# STA SC#3#
A=#A X=FF Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
#3#A- 1# F6 BPL $#3#2
A=#A X=FF Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
#3#C- ## BRK
#3#C- A=#A X=FF Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
*

```

EXAMINING AND CHANGING REGISTERS

As you saw above, the STEP and TRACE commands displayed the contents of the 6502's internal registers after each instruction. You can examine these registers at will or pre-set them when you TRACE, STEP, or GO a machine language program.

The Monitor reserves five locations in memory for the five 6502 registers: A, X, Y, P (processor status register), and S (stack pointer). The Monitor's EXAMINE command, invoked by a **[CTRL E]**, tells the Monitor to display the contents of these locations on the screen, and lets the location which holds the 6502's A-register be the next changeable location. If you want to change the values in these locations, just type a colon and the values separated by spaces. Next time you give the Monitor a GO, STEP, or TRACE command, the Monitor will load these five locations into their proper registers inside the 6502 before it executes the first instruction in your program.

* [CTRL E]

```

A=#A X=FF Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
*:B# 02

```

* [CTRL E]

```

A=B# X=#2 Y=D8 P=B# S=F8
*3#6S

```

```

#3#6- CA DEX
A=B# X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

```

```

#3#7- 8D 3# C# STA SC#3#
A=B# X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*S

```

```

#3#A- 1# F6 BPL $#3#2
A=B# X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8
*
```

MISCELLANEOUS MONITOR COMMANDS

You can control the setting of the Inverse/Normal location used by the COUT subroutine (see page 32) from the Monitor so that all of the Monitor's output will be in Inverse video. The INVERSE command does this nicely. Input lines are still displayed in Normal mode, however. To return the Monitor's output to Normal mode, use the NORMAL command.

* 0 . F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04  
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6  
* I
```

* 0 . F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04  
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6  
* N
```

* 0 . F

```
0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04  
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6  
*
```

The BASIC command, invoked by a **[CTRL B]**, lets you leave the Monitor and enter the language installed in ROM on your Apple, usually either Apple Integer or Applesoft II BASIC. Any program or variables that you had previously in BASIC will be lost. If you've left BASIC for the Monitor and you want to re-enter BASIC with your program and variables intact, use the **[CTRL C]** (CONTINUE BASIC) command. If you have the Apple Disk Operating System (DOS) active, the '3DG' command will return you to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

The PRINTER command, activated by a **[CTRL P]**, diverts all output normally destined for the screen to an Apple Intelligent Interface® in a given slot in the Apple's backplane. The slot number should be from 1 to 7, and there should be an interface card in the given slot, or you will lose control of your Apple and your program and variables may be lost. The format for the command is:

[slot number] **[CTRL P]**

A PRINTER command to slot number 0 will reset the flow of printed output back to the Apple's video screen.

The KEYBOARD command similarly substitutes the device in a given backplane slot for the Apple's keyboard. For details on how these commands and their BASIC counterparts PR# and IN# work, please refer to "CSW and KSW Switches", page 83. The format for the KEYBOARD command is:

[slot number] **[CTRL K]**

A slot number of 0 for the KEYBOARD command will force the Monitor to listen for input from the Apple's built-in keyboard.

The Monitor will also perform simple hexadecimal addition and subtraction. Just type a line in the format:

```
{value} + {value}  
{value} - {value}
```

The Apple will perform the arithmetic and display the result:

```
* 2 0+13  
=33  
* 4 A-C  
=3E  
* FF+4  
=#3  
* 3-4  
=FF  
*
```

SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. You can intermix any and all commands freely, except the STORE (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a STORE must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. The NORMAL command makes a good separator; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.

```
* 300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302 300S S  
#3#0- #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0 #0  
#3#0- 18 69 #1  
#3#0- 18 CLC  
A=#4 X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8  
#3#1- 69 #1 ADC #$#1  
A=#5 X=#1 Y=D8 P=3# S=F8  
*
```

Single-letter commands such as L, S, I, and N need not be separated by spaces.

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line which it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it will execute all commands on the input line up to that character, and then grind to a halt with a noisy beep, ignoring the remainder of the input line.

The MOVE command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range in memory.

To do this, first store the pattern in its first position in the range:

```
* 300:11 22 33  
*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, 3. Then use this special arrangement of the MOVE command:

```
{start+number} < {start} . {end-number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then re-replicate that pattern following itself, and so on until it fills the entire range.

```
* 303<300 . 32DM  
* 300 . 32F  
#3#0- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22  
#3#8- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11  
#31#- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33  
#318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22  
#32#- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11  
#328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33  
*
```

A similar trick can be done with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value:

```
* 300 : 0  
* 301<300 . 31FM  
* 301<300 . 31FV  
* 304 : #2  
* 301<300 . 31FV  
#3#3-#0 (#2)  
#3#4-#2 (#2)  
*
```

You can create a command line which will repeat all or part of itself indefinitely by beginning the part of the command line which is to be repeated with a letter command, such as N, and ending it with the sequence 34:*n*, where *n* is a hexadecimal number specifying the character position of the command which begins the loop; for the first character in the line, *n*=0. The value for *n* must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

```
*N 300 302 34:0  
#3#0- 11
```

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press **RESET**.

CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS

The **USER (CTRL Y)** command, when encountered in the input line, forces the Monitor to jump to location number \$3F8 in memory. You can put your own JMP instruction in this location which will jump to your own program. Your program can then either examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input line itself. For example, here is a program which will make the **CTRL Y** command act as a "comment" indicator: everything on the input line following the **CTRL Y** will be displayed and ignored.

*F666G				
!3#0:LDY \$34				
#3#0-A4 34	LDY	\$34		
! LDA 2#0,Y				
#3#2-B9 # # #2	LDA	\$#2##,Y		
! JSR FDDED				
#3#5-2# ED FD	JSR	\$FDDED		
! INY				
#3#8-C8	INY			
! CMP #\$8D				
#3#9-C9 8D	CMP	#\$8D		
! BNE 3#2				
#3#B-D# F5	BNE	\$#3#2		
! JMP \$FF69				
#3#D-4C 69 FF	JMP	\$FF69		
!3#8:JMP S3#0				
#3#8-4C # # #3	JMP	\$#3#8		

!\$FF69G

***•[CTRL Y] THIS IS A TEST.**
THIS IS A TEST.

*

SUMMARY OF MONITOR COMMANDS

Summary of Monitor Commands.

Examining Memory.

{adr\$}	Examines the value contained in one location.
{adr\$1}.{adr\$2}	Displays the values contained in all locations between {adr\$1} and {adr\$2}.
[RETURN]	Displays the values in up to eight locations following the last opened location.

Changing the Contents of Memory.

{adr\$}:{val} {val} ...	Stores the values in consecutive memory locations starting at {adr\$}.
:{val} {val} ...	Stores values in memory starting at the next changeable location.

Moving and Comparing.

{dest}<{start}.{end}M	Copies the values in the range {start}.{end} into the range beginning at {dest}.
{dest}<{start}.{end}V	Compares the values in the range {start}.{end} to those in the range beginning at {dest}.

Saving and Loading via Tape.

{start}.{end}W	Writes the values in the memory range {start}.{end} onto tape, preceded by a ten-second leader.
{start}.{end}R	Reads values from tape, storing them in memory beginning at {start} and stopping at {end}. Prints "ERR" if an error occurs.

Running and Listing Programs.

{adr\$}G	Transfers control to the machine language program beginning at {adr\$}.
{adr\$}L	Disassembles and displays 20 instructions, starting at {adr\$}. Subsequent L's will display 20 more instructions each.

Summary of Monitor Commands.

The Mini-Assembler

F666G	Invoke the Mini-Assembler.*
\${command}	Execute a Monitor command from the Mini-Assembler.
SFF69G	Leave the Mini-Assembler.
[adr\$] S	Disassemble, display, and execute the instruction at [adr\$], and display the contents of the 6502's internal registers. Subsequent S's will display and execute successive instructions.**
[adr\$] T	Step infinitely. The TRACE command stops only when it executes a BRK instruction or when you press RESET .**

CTRL E

Miscellaneous.

I	Set Inverse display mode.
N	Set Normal display mode.
CTRL B	Enter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
CTRL C	Reenter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
{val} + {val}	Add the two values and print the result.
{val} - {val}	Subtract the second value from the first and print the result.
[slot] CTRL P	Divert output to the device whose interface card is in slot number [slot]. If [slot]= \emptyset , then route output to the Apple's screen.
[slot] CTRL K	Accept input from the device whose interface card is in slot number [slot]. If [slot]= \emptyset , then accept input from the Apple's keyboard.
CTRL Y	Jump to the machine language subroutine at location \$3F8.

* Not available in the Apple II Plus.

** Not available in the Autostart ROM.

SOME USEFUL MONITOR SUBROUTINES

Here is a list of some useful subroutines in the Apple's Monitor and Autostart ROMs. To use these subroutines from machine language programs, load the proper memory locations or 6502 registers as required by the subroutine and execute a JSR to the subroutine's starting address. It will perform the function and return with the 6502's registers set as described.

\$FDED COUT Output a character

COUT is the standard character output subroutine. The character to be output should be in the accumulator. COUT calls the current character output subroutine whose address is stored in CSW (locations \$36 and \$37), usually COUT1 (see below).

\$FDF# COUT1 Output to screen

COUT1 displays the character in the accumulator on the Apple's screen at the current output cursor position and advances the output cursor. It places the character using the setting of the Normal/Inverse location. It handles the control characters RETURN, linefeed, and bell. It returns with all registers intact.

\$FE8# SETINV Set Inverse mode

Sets Inverse video mode for COUT1. All output characters will be displayed as black dots on a white background. The Y register is set to \$3F, all others are unchanged.

\$FE84 SETNORM Set Normal mode

Sets Normal video mode for COUT1. All output characters will be displayed as white dots on a black background. The Y register is set to \$FF, all others are unchanged.

\$FD8E CROUT Generate a RETURN

CROUT sends a RETURN character to the current output device.

\$FD8B CROUT1 RETURN with clear

CROUT1 clears the screen from the current cursor position to the edge of the text window, then calls CROUT.

\$FDDA PRBYTE Print a hexadecimal byte

This subroutine outputs the contents of the accumulator in hexadecimal on the current output device. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

\$FDE3 PRHEX Print a hexadecimal digit

This subroutine outputs the lower nibble of the accumulator as a single hexadecimal digit. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

\$F941 PRNTAX Print A and X in hexadecimal

This outputs the contents of the A and X registers as a four-digit hexadecimal value. The accumulator contains the first byte output, the X register contains the second. The contents of the

accumulator are usually scrambled.

\$F948 PRBLNK Print 3 spaces

Outputs three blank spaces to the standard output device. Upon exit, the accumulator usually contains \$A0, the X register contains 0.

\$F94A PRBL2 Print many blank spaces

This subroutine outputs from 1 to 256 blanks to the standard output device. Upon entry, the X register should contain the number of blanks to be output. If X=\$00, then PRBL2 will output 256 blanks.

\$FF3A BELL Output a "bell" character

This subroutine sends a bell (CTRL G) character to the current output device. It leaves the accumulator holding \$87.

\$FBDD BELL1 Beep the Apple's speaker

This subroutine beeps the Apple's speaker for .1 second at 1KHz. It scrambles the A and X registers.

\$FD#C RDKEY Get an input character

This is the standard character input subroutine. It places a flashing input cursor on the screen at the position of the output cursor and jumps to the current input subroutine whose address is stored in KSW (locations \$38 and \$39), usually KEYIN (see below).

\$FD35 RDCHAR Get an input character or ESC code

RDCHAR is an alternate input subroutine which gets characters from the standard input, but also interprets the eleven escape codes (see page 34).

\$FD1B KEYIN Read the Apple's keyboard

This is the keyboard input subroutine. It reads the Apple's keyboard, waits for a keypress, and randomizes the random number seed (see page 32). When it gets a keypress, it removes the flashing cursor and returns with the keycode in the accumulator.

\$FD6A GETLN Get an input line with prompt

GETLN is the subroutine which gathers input lines (see page 33). Your programs can call GETLN with the proper prompt character in location \$33; GETLN will return with the input line in the input buffer (beginning at location \$200) and the X register holding the length of the input line.

\$FD67 GETLNZ Get an input line

GETLNZ is an alternate entry point for GETLN which issues a carriage return to the standard output before falling into GETLN (see above).

\$FD6F **GETLNI** Get an input line, no prompt

GETLNI is an alternate entry point for GETLN which does not issue a prompt before it gathers the input line. If, however, the user cancels the input line, either with too many backspaces or with a **CTRL X**, then GETLNI will issue the contents of location \$33 as a prompt when it gets another line.

SFCA8 **WAIT** Delay

This subroutine delays for a specific amount of time, then returns to the program which called it. The amount of delay is specified by the contents of the accumulator. With A the contents of the accumulator, the delay is $\frac{1}{2}(26 + 27A + 5A^2)$ microseconds. WAIT returns with the A register zeroed and the X and Y registers undisturbed.

SF864 **SETCOL** Set Low-Res Graphics color

This subroutine sets the color used for plotting on the Low-Res screen to the color passed in the accumulator. See page 17 for a table of Low-Res colors.

SF85F **NEXTCOL** Increment color by 3

This adds 3 to the current color used for Low-Res Graphics.

SF80# **PLOT** Plot a block on the Low-Res screen

This subroutine plots a single block on the Low-Res screen of the prespecified color. The block's vertical position is passed in the accumulator, its horizontal position in the Y register. PLOT returns with the accumulator scrambled, but X and Y unmolested.

SF819 **HLINE** Draw a horizontal line of blocks

This subroutine draws a horizontal line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call HLINE with the vertical coordinate of the line in the accumulator, the leftmost horizontal coordinate in the Y register, and the rightmost horizontal coordinate in location \$2C. HLINE returns with A and Y scrambled, X intact.

SF828 **VLINE** Draw a vertical line of blocks

This subroutine draws a vertical line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call VLINE with the horizontal coordinate of the line in the Y register, the top vertical coordinate in the accumulator, and the bottom vertical coordinate in location \$2D. VLINE will return with the accumulator scrambled.

SF832 **CLRSCR** Clear the entire Low-Res screen

CLRSCR clears the entire Low-resolution Graphics screen. If you call CLRSCR while the video display is in Text mode, it will fill the screen with inverse-mode "@" characters. CLRSCR destroys the contents of A and Y.

SF836 **CLRTOP** Clear the top of the Low-Res screen

CLRTOP is the same as CLRSCR (above), except that it clears only the top 40 rows of the screen.

\$F871 **SCRN** **Read the Low-Res screen**

This subroutine returns the color of a single block on the Low-Res screen. Call it as you would call PLOT (above). The color of the block will be returned in the accumulator. No other registers are changed.

\$FB1E **PREAD** **Read a Game Controller**

PREAD will return a number which represents the position of a game controller. You should pass the number of the game controller (0 to 3) in the X register. If this number is not valid, strange things may happen. PREAD returns with a number from \$00 to \$FF in the Y register. The accumulator is scrambled.

\$FF2D **PRERR** **Print "ERR"**

Sends the word "ERR", followed by a bell character, to the standard output device. The accumulator is scrambled.

\$FF4A **IOSAVE** **Save all registers**

The contents of the 6502's internal registers are saved in locations \$45 through \$49 in the order A-X-Y-P-S. The contents of A and X are changed; the decimal mode is cleared.

\$FF3F **IOREST** **Restore all registers**

The contents of the 6502's internal registers are loaded from locations \$45 through \$49.

MONITOR SPECIAL LOCATIONS

Table 14: Page Three Monitor Locations

Address: Decimal	Hex	Use: Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
1008	\$3F0		Holds the address of the subroutine which handles machine language "BRK" requests (normally \$FA59).
1009	\$3F1	None.	
1010	\$3F2		
1011	\$3F3	None.	Soft Entry Vector.
1012	\$3F4	None.	Power-up Byte.
1013	\$3F5	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the	
1014	\$3F6	subroutine which handles Applesoft II	
1015	\$3F7	"&" commands.* Normally \$4C \$58 \$FF.	
1016	\$3F8	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the	
1017	\$3F9	subroutine which handles "USER"	
1018	\$3FA	([CTRL Y]) commands.	
1019	\$3FB	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the	
1020	\$3FC	subroutine which handles Non-	
1021	\$3FD	Maskable Interrupts.	
1022	\$3FE	Holds the address of the subroutine	
1023	\$3FF	which handles Interrupt ReQuests.	

* See page 123 in the Applesoft II BASIC Reference Manual.

MINI-ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION FORMATS

The Apple Mini-Assembler recognizes 56 mnemonics and 13 addressing formats used in 6502 Assembly language programming. The mnemonics are standard, as used in the **MOS Technology/Synertek 6500 Programming Manual** (Apple part number A2L0003), but the addressing formats are different. Here are the Apple standard address mode formats for 6502 Assembly Language:

Table 15: Mini-Assembler Address Formats	
Mode:	Format:
Accumulator	None.
Immediate	#\$[value]
Absolute	\$[address]
Zero Page	\$[address]
Indexed Zero Page	\$[address].X \$[address].Y
Indexed Absolute	\$[address].X \$[address].Y
Implied	None.
Relative	\$[address]
Indexed Indirect	(\$[address],X)
Indirect Indexed	(\$[address]),Y
Absolute Indirect	(\$[address])

An [address] consists of one or more hexadecimal digits. The Mini-Assembler interprets addresses in the same manner that the Monitor does: if an address has fewer than four digits, it adds leading zeroes; if it has more than four digits, then it uses only the last four.

All dollar signs (\$), signifying that the addresses are in hexadecimal notation, are ignored by the Mini-Assembler and may be omitted.

There is no syntactical distinction between the Absolute and Zero Page addressing modes. If you give an instruction to the Mini-Assembler which can be used in both Absolute and Zero-Page mode, then the Mini-Assembler will assemble that instruction in Absolute mode if the operand for that instruction is greater than \$FF, and it will assemble that instruction in Zero Page mode if the operand for that instruction is less than \$0100.

Instructions with the Accumulator and Implied addressing modes need no operand.

Branch instructions, which use the Relative addressing mode, require the *target address* of the branch. The Mini-Assembler will automatically figure out the relative distance to use in the instruction. If the target address is more than 127 locations distant from the instruction, then the Mini-Assembler will sound a "beep", place a circumflex (^) under the target address, and ignore the line.

If you give the Mini-Assembler the mnemonic for an instruction and an operand, and the addressing mode of the operand cannot be used with the instruction you entered, then the Mini-Assembler will not accept the line.

CHAPTER 4

MEMORY ORGANIZATION

- 68 RAM STORAGE
- 70 RAM CONFIGURATION BLOCKS
- 72 ROM STORAGE
- 73 I/O LOCATIONS
- 74 ZERO PAGE MEMORY MAPS

The Apple's 6502 microprocessor can directly reference a total of 65,536 distinct memory locations. You can think of the Apple's memory as a book with 256 "pages", with 256 memory locations on each page. For example, "page \$30" is the 256 memory locations beginning at location \$3000 and ending at location \$30FF. Since the 6502 uses two eight-bit bytes to form the address of any memory location, you can think of one of the bytes as the *page number* and the other as the *location within the page*.

The Apple's 256 pages of memory fall into three categories: Random Access Memory (RAM), Read-Only Memory (ROM), and Input/Output locations (I/O). Different areas of memory are dedicated to different functions. The Apple's basic memory map looks like this:

System Memory Map		
Page Number:		
	Decimal	Hex
0	\$00	
1	\$01	
2	\$02	
.	.	
.	.	
190	\$BE	
191	\$BF	
192	\$C0	
193	\$C1	
.	.	
.	.	
198	\$C6	
199	\$C7	
200	\$C8	
201	\$C9	
.	.	
.	.	
206	\$CE	
207	\$CF	
208	\$D0	
209	\$D1	
.	.	
.	.	
254	\$FE	
255	\$FF	

Figure 5. System Memory Map

RAM STORAGE

The area in the Apple's memory map which is allocated for RAM memory begins at the bottom

of Page Zero and extends up to the end of Page 191. The Apple has the capacity to house from 4K (4,096 bytes) to 48K (49,152 bytes) of RAM on its main circuit board. In addition, you can expand the RAM memory of your Apple all the way up to 64K (65,536 bytes) by installing an Apple Language Card (part number A2B0006). This extra 16K of RAM takes the place of the Apple's ROM memory, with two 4K segments of RAM sharing the 4K range from \$D000 to \$DFFF.

Most of your Apple's RAM memory is available to you for the storage of programs and data. The Apple, however, does reserve some locations in RAM for use of the System Monitor, various languages, and other system functions. Here is a map of the available areas in RAM memory:

Table 16: RAM Organization and Usage		
Page Number: Decimal Hex	Used For:	
0 \$00	System Programs	
1 \$01	System Stack	
2 \$02	GETLN Input Buffer	
3 \$03	Monitor Vector Locations	
4 \$04		
5 \$05	Text and Lo-Res Graphics	
6 \$06	Primary Page Storage	
7 \$07		
8 \$08		
9 \$09	Text and Lo-Res Graphics	
10 \$0A	Secondary Page Storage	
11 \$0B		
12 through 31 \$0C \$1F		FREE
32 through 63 \$20 \$3F	Hi-Res Graphics Primary Page Storage	RAM
64 through 95 \$40 \$5F	Hi-Res Graphics Secondary Page Storage	
96 through 191 \$60 \$BF		

Following is a breakdown of which ranges are assigned to which functions:

Zero Page. Due to the construction of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor, the lowermost page in the Apple's memory is prime real estate for machine language programs. The System Monitor uses about 20 locations on Page Zero; Apple Integer BASIC uses a few more; and Applesoft II BASIC and the Apple Disk Operating System use the rest. Tables 18, 19, 20, and 21 show the locations on zero page which are used by these system functions.

Page One. The Apple's 6502 microprocessor reserves all 256 bytes of Page 1 for use as a "stack". Even though the Apple usually uses less than half of this page at any one time, it is not easy to determine just what is being used and what is lying fallow, so you shouldn't try to use

Page 1 to store any data.

Page Two. The GETLN subroutine, which is used to get input lines by most programs and languages, uses Page 2 as its input buffer. If you're sure that you won't be typing any long input lines, then you can (somewhat) safely store temporary data in the upper regions of Page 2.

Page Three. The Apple's Monitor ROM (both the Autostart and the original) use the upper sixteen locations in Page Three, from location \$3F0 to \$3FF (decimal 1008 to 1023). The Monitor's use of these locations is outlined on page 62.

Pages Four through Seven. This 1,024-byte range of memory locations is used for the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics Primary Page display, and is therefore unusable for storage purposes. There are 64 locations in this range which are not displayed on the screen. These 64 locations are reserved for use by the peripheral cards (see page 82).

RAM CONFIGURATION BLOCKS

The Apple's RAM memory is composed of eight to 24 integrated circuits. These IC's reside in three rows of sockets on the Apple board. Each row can hold eight chips of either the 4,096-bit (4K) or 16,384-bit (16K) variety. The 4K RAM chips are of the Mostek "4096" family, and may be marked "MK4096" or "MCM6604". The 16K chips are of the "4116" type, and may have the denomination "MK4116" or "UPD4160". Each row must have eight of the same type of chip, although different rows may hold different types.

A row of eight 16K IC's represents 16,384 eight-bit bytes of RAM. The leftmost IC in a row represents the lowermost (least significant) bit of every byte in that range, and the rightmost IC in a row represents the uppermost (most significant) bit of every byte. The row of RAM IC's which is frontmost on the Apple board holds the RAM memory which begins at location 0 in the memory map; the next row back continues where the first left off.

You can tell the Apple how much memory it has, and of what type it is, by plugging *Memory Configuration Blocks* into three IC sockets on the left side of the Apple board. These configuration blocks are three 14-legged critters which look like big, boxy integrated circuits. But there are no chips inside of them; only three jumper wires in each. The jumper wires "strap" each row of RAM chips into a specific place in the Apple's memory map. All three configuration blocks should be strapped the same way. Apple supplies several types of standard configuration blocks for the most common system sizes. A set of these was installed in your Apple when it was built, and you get a new set each time you purchase additional memory for your Apple. If, however, you want to expand your Apple's memory with some RAM chips that you did not purchase from Apple, you may have to construct your own configuration blocks (or modify the ones already in your Apple).

There are nine different RAM memory configurations possible in your Apple. These nine memory sizes are made up from various combinations of 4K and 16K RAM chips in the three rows of sockets in your Apple. The nine memory configurations are:

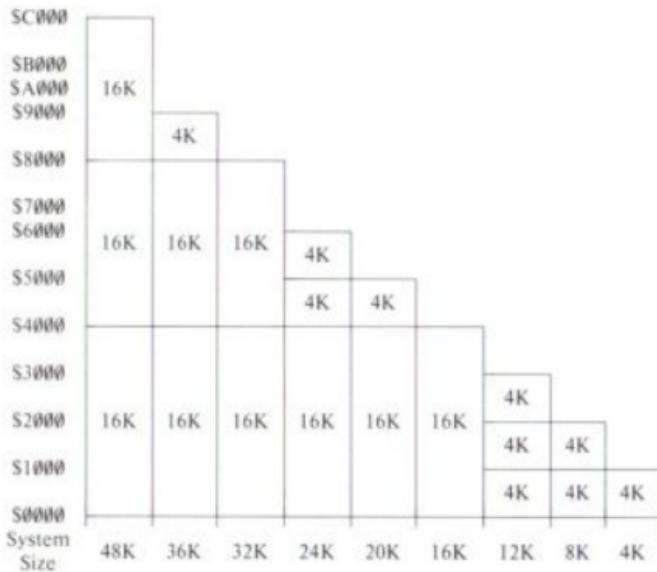


Figure 6. Memory Configurations

Of the fourteen "legs" on each controller block, the three in the upper-right corner (looking at it from above) represent the three rows of RAM chips on the Apple's main board. There should be a wire jumper from each one of these pins to another pin in the configuration block. The "other pin" corresponds to a place in the Apple's memory map where you want the RAM chips in each row to reside. The pins on the configuration block are represented thus:

4K range \$0000-\$0FFF	1	○	14	Frontmost row ("C")
4K range \$1000-\$1FFF	2		13	Middle row ("D")
4K range \$2000-\$2FFF	3		12	Backmost row ("E")
4K range \$3000-\$3FFF	4		11	No connection.
4K range \$4000-\$4FFF	5		10	16K range \$0000-\$3FFF
4K range \$5000-\$5FFF	6		9	16K range \$4000-\$7FFF
4K range \$8000-\$8FFF	7		8	16K range \$8000-\$BFFF

Figure 7. Memory Configuration Block Pinouts

If a row contains eight chips of the 16K variety, then you should connect a jumper wire from the pin corresponding to that row to a pin corresponding to a 16K range of memory. Similarly, if a row contains eight 4K chips, you should connect a jumper wire from the pin for that row to a pin corresponding to a 4K range of memory. You should *never* put 4K chips in a row strapped for 16K, or vice versa. It is also not advisable to leave a row unstrapped, or to strap two rows into the same range of memory.

You should always make sure that there is some kind of memory beginning at location 0. Your Apple's memory should be in one contiguous block, but it does not need to be. For example, if you have only three sets of 4K chips, but you want to use the primary page of the High-

Resolution Graphics mode, then you would strap one row of 4K chips to the beginning of memory (4K range \$0000 through \$0FFF), and strap the other two rows to the memory range used by the High-Resolution Graphics primary page (4K ranges \$2000 through \$2FFF and \$3000 through \$3FFF). This will give you 4K bytes of RAM memory to work with, and 8K bytes of RAM to be used as a picture buffer.

Notice that the configuration blocks are installed into the Apple with their front edges (the edge with the white dot, representing pin 1) towards the front of the Apple.

There is a problem in Apples with Revision 0 boards and 20K or 24K of RAM. In these systems, the 8K range of the memory map from \$4000 to \$5FFF is duplicated in the memory range \$6000 to \$7FFF, regardless of whether it contains RAM or not. So systems with only 20K or 24K of RAM would appear to have 24K or 36K, but this extra RAM would be only imaginary. This has been changed in the Revision 1 Apple boards.

ROM STORAGE

The Apple, in its natural state, can hold from 2K (2,048 bytes) to 12K (12,288 bytes) of Read-Only memory on its main board. This ROM memory can include the System Monitor, a couple of dialects of the BASIC language, various system and utility programs, or pre-packaged subroutines such as are included in Apple's *Programmer's Aid #1* ROM.

The Apple's ROM memory resides in the top 12K (48 pages) of the memory map, beginning at location \$D000. For proper operation of the Apple, there must be some kind of ROM in the uppermost locations of memory. When you turn on the Apple's power supply, the microprocessor must have some program to execute. It goes to the top locations in the memory map for the address of this program. In the Apple, this address is stored in ROM, and is the address of a program within the same ROM. This program initializes the Apple and lets you start to use it. (For a description of the startup cycle, see "The RESET Cycle", page 36.)

Here is a map of the Apple's ROM memory, and of the programs and packages that Apple currently supports in ROM:

Table 17: ROM Organization and Usage		
Page Number: Decimal	Hex	Used By:
208	\$D0	
212	\$D4	Programmer's Aid #1
216	\$D8	
220	\$DC	
224	\$E0	
228	\$E4	
232	\$E8	Integer BASIC
236	\$EC	
240	\$F0	
244	\$F4	Utility Subroutines
248	\$F8	Monitor ROM
252	\$FC	Autostart ROM

Six 24-pin IC sockets on the Apple's board hold the ROM integrated circuits. Each socket can hold one of a type 9316B 2,048-byte by 8-bit Read-Only Memory. The leftmost ROM in the Apple's board holds the upper 2K of ROM in the Apple's memory map; the rightmost ROM IC holds the ROM memory beginning at page \$D0 in the memory map. If a ROM is not present in a given socket, then the values contained in the memory range corresponding to that socket will be unpredictable.

The Apple Firmware card can disable some or all of the ROMs on the Apple board, and substitute its own ROMs in their place. When you have an Apple Firmware card installed in any slot in the Apple's board, you can disable the Apple's on-board ROMs by flipping the card's controller switch to its UP position and pressing and releasing the [RESET] button, or by referencing location SC080 (decimal 49280 or -16256). To enable the Apple's on-board ROMs again, flip the controller switch to the DOWN position and press [RESET], or reference location SC081 (decimal 49281 or -16255). For more information, see Appendix A of the **Applesoft II BASIC Programming Reference Manual**.

I/O LOCATIONS

4,096 memory locations (16 pages) of the Apple's memory map are dedicated to input and output functions. This 4K range begins at location \$C000 (decimal 49152 or -16384) and extends on up to location \$CFFF (decimal 53247 or -12289). Since these functions are somewhat intricate, they have been given a chapter all to themselves. Please see Chapter 5 for information on the allocation of Input/Output locations.

ZERO PAGE MEMORY MAPS

Table 18: Monitor Zero Page Usage

Decimal	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Hex	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
0	\$00															
16	\$10															
32	\$20	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
48	\$30	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
64	\$40	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
80	\$50	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
96	\$60															
112	\$70															
128	\$80															
144	\$90															
160	\$A0															
176	\$B0															
192	\$C0															
208	\$D0															
224	\$E0															
240	\$F0															

Table 19: Applesoft II BASIC Zero Page Usage

Decimal	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Hex	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
0	\$00	•	•	•	•	•	•				•	•	•	•	•	•
16	\$10	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•						
32	\$20															
48	\$30															
64	\$40															
80	\$50	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
96	\$60	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
112	\$70	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
128	\$80	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
144	\$90	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
160	\$A0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
176	\$B0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
192	\$C0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
208	\$D0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
224	\$E0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
240	\$F0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Table 20: Apple DOS 3.2 Zero Page Usage

Decimal	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Hex	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
0	\$00															
16	\$10															
32	\$20															
48	\$30															
64	\$40	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•
80	\$50															
96	\$60															
112	\$70	•														
128	\$80															
144	\$90															
160	\$A0															
176	\$B0	•														
192	\$C0											•	•	•	•	•
208	\$D0															
224	\$E0															
240	\$F0															

Table 21: Integer BASIC Zero Page Usage

Decimal	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Hex	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
0	\$00															
16	\$10															
32	\$20															
48	\$30															
64	\$40															
80	\$50															
96	\$60	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
112	\$70	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
128	\$80	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
144	\$90	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
160	\$A0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
176	\$B0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
192	\$C0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
208	\$D0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
224	\$E0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
240	\$F0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•



CHAPTER 5

INPUT/OUTPUT STRUCTURE

- 78 BUILT-IN I/O
- 79 PERIPHERAL BOARD I/O
- 80 PERIPHERAL CARD I/O SPACE
- 80 PERIPHERAL CARD ROM SPACE
- 81 I/O PROGRAMMING SUGGESTIONS
- 82 PERIPHERAL SLOT SCRATCHPAD RAM
- 83 THE CSW/KSW SWITCHES
- 84 EXPANSION ROM

The Apple's Input and Output functions fall into two basic categories: those functions which are performed on the Apple's board itself, and those functions which are performed by peripheral interface cards plugged into the Apple's eight peripheral "slots". Both of these functions communicate to the microprocessor and your programs via 4,096 locations in the Apple's memory map. This chapter describes the memory mapping and operation of the various input and output controls and functions; the hardware which executes these functions is described in the next chapter.

BUILT-IN I/O

Most of the Apple's inherent I/O facilities are described briefly in Chapter 1, "Approaching your Apple". For a short description of these facilities, please see that chapter.

The Apple's on-board I/O functions are controlled by 128 memory locations in the Apple's memory map, beginning at location SC000 and extending up through location SC07F (decimal 49152 through 49279, or -16384 through -16257). Twenty-seven different functions share these 128 locations. Obviously, some functions are affected by more than one location: in some instances, as many as sixteen different locations all can perform exactly the same function. These 128 locations fall into five types: Data Inputs, Strobes, Soft Switches, Toggle Switches, and Flag Inputs.

Data Inputs. The only Data Input on the Apple board is a location whose value represents the current state of the Apple's built-in keyboard. The uppermost bit of this input is akin to the Flag Inputs (see below); the lower seven bits are the ASCII code of the key which was most recently pressed on the keyboard.

Flag Inputs. Most built-in input locations on the Apple are single-bit 'flags'. These flags appear in the highest (eighth) bit position in their respective memory locations. Flags have only two values: 'on' and 'off'. The setting of a flag can be tested easily from any language. A higher-level language can use a "PEEK" or similar command to read the value of a flag location: if the PEEKed value is greater than or equal to 128, then the flag is on; if the value is less than 128, the flag is off. Machine language programs can load the contents of a flag location into one of the 6502's internal registers (or use the BIT instruction) and branch depending upon the setting of the N (sign) flag. A BMI instruction will cause a branch if the flag is on, and a BPL instruction will cause a branch if the flag is off.

The Single-Bit (Pushbutton) inputs, the Cassette input, the Keyboard Strobe, and the Game Controller inputs are all of this type.

Strobe Outputs. The Utility Strobe, the Clear Keyboard Strobe, and the Game Controller Strobe are all controlled by memory locations. If your program reads the contents of one of these locations, then the function associated with that location will be activated. In the case of the Utility Strobe, pin 5 on the Game I/O connector will drop from +5 volts to 0 volts for a period of .98 microseconds, then rise back to +5 again; in the case of the Keyboard Strobe, the Keyboard's flag input (see above) will be turned off; and in the case of the Game Controller Strobe, all of the flag inputs of the Game Controllers will be turned off and their timing loops restarted.

Your program can also trigger the Keyboard and Game Controller Strobes by writing to their controlling locations, but you should not write to the Utility Strobe location. If you do, you will produce two .98 microsecond pulses, about 24.43 nanoseconds apart. This is due to the method in which the 6502 writes to a memory location: first it reads the contents of that location, then it

writes over them. This double pulse will go unnoticed for the Keyboard and Game Controller Strobes, but may cause problems if it appears on the Utility Strobe.

Toggle Switches. Two other strobe outputs are connected internally to two-state "flip-flops". Each time you read from the location associated with the strobe, its flip-flop will "toggle" to its other state. These toggle switches drive the Cassette Output and the internal Speaker. There is no practical way to determine the setting of an internal toggle switch. Because of the nature of the toggle switches, you should only read from their controlling locations, and not write to them (see Strobe Outputs, above).

Soft Switches. Soft Switches are two-position switches in which each side of the switch is controlled by an individual memory location. If you reference the location for one side of the switch, it will throw the switch that way; if you reference the location for the other side, it will throw the switch the other way. It sets the switch without regard to its former setting, and there is no way to determine the position a soft switch is in. You can safely write to soft switch controlling locations: two pulses are as good as one (see Strobe Outputs, above). The Announcer outputs and all of the Video mode selections are controlled by soft switches.

The special memory locations which control the built-in Input and Output functions are arranged thus:

Table 22: Built-In I/O Locations

	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	SA	SB	SC	SD	SE	SF
SC000	Keyboard Data Input															
SC010	Clear Keyboard Strobe															
SC020	Cassette Output Toggle															
SC030	Speaker Toggle															
SC040	Utility Strobe															
SC050	gr	tx	nomix	mix	pri	sec	lores	hires		an#		an1		an2		an3
SC060	cin	pb1	pb2	pb3	gc#	gc1	gc2	gc3								repeat SC060-SC067
SC070	Game Controller Strobe															

Key to abbreviations:

gr	Set GRAPHICS mode	tx	Set TEXT mode
nomix	Set all text or graphics	mix	Mix text and graphics
pri	Display primary page	sec	Display secondary page
lores	Display Low-Res Graphics	hires	Display Hi-Res Graphics
an	Announcer outputs	pb	Pushbutton inputs
gc	Game Controller inputs	cin	Cassette Input

PERIPHERAL BOARD I/O

Along the back of the Apple's main board is a row of eight long "slots", or Peripheral Connectors. Into seven of these eight slots, you can plug any of many Peripheral Interface boards designed especially for the Apple. In order to make the peripheral cards simpler and more versatile, the Apple's circuitry has allocated a total of 280 byte locations in the memory map for each

of seven slots. There is also a 2K byte "common area", which all peripheral cards in your Apple can share.

Each slot on the board is individually numbered, with the leftmost slot called "Slot 0" and the rightmost called "Slot 7". Slot 0 is special: it is meant for RAM, ROM, or Interface expansion. All other slots (1 through 7) have special control lines going to them which are active at different times for different slots.

PERIPHERAL CARD I/O SPACE

Each slot is given sixteen locations beginning at location \$C080 for general input and output purposes. For slot 0, these sixteen locations fall in the memory range \$C080 through \$C08F; for slot 1, they're in the range \$C090 through \$C09F, *et cetera*. Each peripheral card can use these locations as it pleases. Each peripheral card can determine when it is being selected by listening to pin 41 (called DEVICE SELECT) on its peripheral connector. Whenever the voltage on this pin drops to 0 volts, the address which the microprocessor is calling is somewhere in that peripheral card's 16-byte allocation. The peripheral card can then look at the bottom four address lines to determine which of its sixteen addresses is being called.

Table 23: Peripheral Card I/O Locations

\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
\$C080															0
\$C090															1
\$C0A0															2
\$C0B0															3
\$C0C0															4
\$C0D0															5
\$C0E0															6
\$C0F0															7

PERIPHERAL CARD ROM SPACE

Each peripheral slot also has reserved for it one 256-byte page of memory. This page is usually used to house 256 bytes of ROM or Programmable ROM (PROM) memory, which contains driving programs or subroutines for the peripheral card. In this way, the peripheral interface cards can be "intelligent": they contain their own driving software; you do not need to load separate programs in order to use the interface cards.

The page of memory reserved for each peripheral slot has the page number \$Cn, where n is the slot number. Slot 0 does not have a page reserved for it, so you cannot use most Apple interface cards in that slot. The signal on Pin 1 (called I/O SELECT) of each peripheral slot will become active (drop from +5 volts to ground) when the microprocessor is referencing an address within that slot's reserved page. Peripheral cards can use this signal to enable their PROMs, and use the lower eight address lines to address each byte in the PROM.

Table 24: Peripheral Card PROM Locations

	\$00	\$10	\$20	\$30	\$40	\$50	\$60	\$70	\$80	\$90	\$A0	\$B0	\$C0	\$D0	\$E0	\$F0
SC100											1					
SC200											2					
SC300											3					
SC400											PROM space for slot number	4				
SC500												5				
SC600												6				
SC700												7				

I/O PROGRAMMING SUGGESTIONS

The programs in peripheral card PROMs should be portable; that is, they should be able to function correctly regardless of where they are placed in the Apple's memory map. They should contain no absolute references to themselves. They should perform all JUMPs with conditional or forced branches.

Of course, you can fill a peripheral card PROM with subroutines which are *not* portable, and your only loss would be that the peripheral card would be slot-dependent. If you're cramped for space in a peripheral card PROM, you can save many bytes by making the subroutines slot-dependent.

The first thing that a subroutine in a peripheral card PROM should do is to save the values of *all* of the 6502's internal registers. There is a subroutine called IOSAVE in the Apple's Monitor ROM which does just this. It saves the contents of all internal registers in memory locations \$45 through \$49, in the order A-X-Y-P-S. This subroutine starts at location \$FF4A. A companion subroutine, called IORESTORE, restores *all* of the internal registers from these storage locations. You should call this subroutine, located at \$FF3F, before your PROM subroutine finishes.

Most single-character input and output is passed in the 6502's Accumulator. During output, the character to be displayed is in the Accumulator, with its high bit set. During input, your subroutine should pass the character received from the input device in the Accumulator, also with its high bit set.

A program in a peripheral card's PROM can determine which slot the card is plugged into by executing this sequence of instructions:

0300 -	20 4A FF	JSR	\$FF4A
0303 -	78	SEI	
0304 -	20 58 FF	JSR	\$FF58
0307 -	BA	TSX	
0308 -	BD 00 01	LDA	\$0100,X
030B -	8D F8 07	STA	\$07F8
030E -	29 0F	AND	#\$0F
0310 -	A8	TAY	

After a program executes these steps, the slot number which its card is in will be stored in the 6502's Y index register in the format \$0n, where n is the slot number. A program in the ROM can further process this value by shifting it four bits to the left, to obtain \$n0.

0312-	0A	ASL
0313-	0A	ASL
0314-	0A	ASL
0315-	0A	ASL
0316-	AA	TAX

A program can use this number in the X index register with the 6502's indexed addressing mode to refer to the sixteen I/O locations reserved for each card. For example, the instruction

0317- BD 80 C0 LDA SC080,X

will load the 6502's accumulator with the contents of the first I/O location used by the peripheral card. The address SC080 is the *base address* for the first location used by all eight peripheral slots. The address SC081 is the base address for the second I/O location, and so on. Here are the base addresses for all sixteen I/O locations on each card:

Table 25: I/O Location Base Addresses

Base Address	Slot							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
SC080	SC080	SC090	SC0A0	SC0B0	SC0C0	SC0D0	SC0E0	SC0F0
SC081	SC081	SC091	SC0A1	SC0B1	SC0C1	SC0D1	SC0E1	SC0F1
SC082	SC082	SC092	SC0A2	SC0B2	SC0C2	SC0D2	SC0E2	SC0F2
SC083	SC083	SC093	SC0A3	SC0B3	SC0C3	SC0D3	SC0E3	SC0F3
SC084	SC084	SC094	SC0A4	SC0B4	SC0C4	SC0D4	SC0E4	SC0F4
SC085	SC085	SC095	SC0A5	SC0B5	SC0C5	SC0D5	SC0E5	SC0F5
SC086	SC086	SC096	SC0A6	SC0B6	SC0C6	SC0D6	SC0E6	SC0F6
SC087	SC087	SC097	SC0A7	SC0B7	SC0C7	SC0D7	SC0E7	SC0F7
SC088	SC088	SC098	SC0A8	SC0B8	SC0C8	SC0D8	SC0E8	SC0F8
SC089	SC089	SC099	SC0A9	SC0B9	SC0C9	SC0D9	SC0E9	SC0F9
SC08A	SC08A	SC09A	SC0AA	SC0BA	SC0CA	SC0DA	SC0EA	SC0FA
SC08B	SC08B	SC09B	SC0AB	SC0BB	SC0CB	SC0DB	SC0EB	SC0FB
SC08C	SC08C	SC09C	SC0AC	SC0BC	SC0CC	SC0DC	SC0EC	SC0FC
SC08D	SC08D	SC09D	SC0AD	SC0BD	SC0CD	SC0DD	SC0ED	SC0FD
SC08E	SC08E	SC09E	SC0AE	SC0BE	SC0CE	SC0DE	SC0EE	SC0FE
SC08F	SC08F	SC09F	SC0AF	SC0BF	SC0CF	SC0DF	SC0EF	SC0FF
I/O Locations								

PERIPHERAL SLOT SCRATCHPAD RAM

Each of the eight peripheral slots has reserved for it 8 locations in the Apple's RAM memory. These 64 locations are actually in memory pages \$04 through \$07, inside the area reserved for the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics video display. The contents of these locations, however, are *not* displayed on the screen, and their contents are not changed by normal screen operations.* The peripheral cards can use these locations for temporary storage of data while the cards are in operation. These "scratchpad" locations have the following addresses:

* See "But Soft...", page 31.

Table 26: I/O Scratchpad RAM Addresses

Base Address	Slot Number						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
\$0478	\$0479	\$047A	\$047B	\$047C	\$047D	\$047E	\$047F
\$04F8	\$04F9	\$04FA	\$04FB	\$04FC	\$04FD	\$04FE	\$04FF
\$0578	\$0579	\$057A	\$057B	\$057C	\$057D	\$057E	\$057F
\$05F8	\$05F9	\$05FA	\$05FB	\$05FC	\$05FD	\$05FE	\$05FF
\$0678	\$0679	\$067A	\$067B	\$067C	\$067D	\$067E	\$067F
\$06F8	\$06F9	\$06FA	\$06FB	\$06FC	\$06FD	\$06FE	\$06FF
\$0778	\$0779	\$077A	\$077B	\$077C	\$077D	\$077E	\$077F
\$07F8	\$07F9	\$07FA	\$07FB	\$07FC	\$07FD	\$07FE	\$07FF

Slot 0 does not have any scratchpad RAM addresses reserved for it. The Base Address locations are used by Apple DOS 3.2 and are also shared by all peripheral cards. Some of these locations have dedicated functions: location \$7F8 holds the slot number (in the format \$Cn) of the peripheral card which is currently active, and location \$5F8 holds the slot number of the disk controller card from which any active DOS was booted.

By using the slot number \$0n, derived in the program example above, a subroutine can directly reference any of its eight scratchpad locations:

031A-	B9 78 04	LDA	\$0478 ,Y
031D-	99 F8 04	STA	\$04F8 ,Y
0320-	B9 78 05	LDA	\$0578 ,Y
0323-	99 F8 05	STA	\$05F8 ,Y
0326-	B9 78 06	LDA	\$0678 ,Y
0329-	99 F8 06	STA	\$06F8 ,Y
032C-	B9 78 07	LDA	\$0778 ,Y
032F-	99 F8 07	STA	\$07F8 ,Y

THE CSW/KSW SWITCHES

The pair of locations \$36 and \$37 (decimal 54 and 55) is called CSW, for "Character output SWitch". Individually, location \$36 is called CSWL (CSW Low) and location \$37 is called CSWH (CSW High). This pair of locations holds the address of the subroutine which the Apple is currently using for single-character output. This address is normally \$FDF0, the address of the COUT subroutine (see page 30). The Monitor's PRINTER ([CTRL P]) command, and the BASIC command PR#, can change this address to be the address of a subroutine in a PROM on a peripheral card. Both of these commands put the address \$Cn@0 into this pair of locations, where n is the slot number given in the command. This is the address of the first location in whatever PROM happens to be on the peripheral card plugged into that slot. The Apple will then call this subroutine every time it wishes to output one character. This subroutine can use the instruction sequences given above to find its slot number and use the I/O and RAM scratchpad locations for its slot. When it is finished, it can either execute an RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine) instruction, to return to the program or language which is sending the output, or it can jump to the COUT subroutine at location \$FDF0, to display the character on the screen and then return to the program which is producing output.

Similarly, locations \$38 and 39 (decimal 56 and 57), called KSWL and KSWH separately or KSW

(Keyboard input SWitch) together, hold the address of the subroutine the Apple is currently using for single-character input. This address is normally \$FD1B, the address of the KEYIN subroutine. The Monitor's KEYBOARD command (**CTRL K**) and the BASIC command IN# both change this address to \$Cn00, again with *n* the slot number given in the command. The Apple will call the subroutine at the beginning of the PROM on the peripheral card in this slot whenever it wishes to get a single character from the input device. The subroutine should place the input character into the 6502's accumulator and ReTurn from Subroutine (RTS). The subroutine should set the high bit of the character before it returns.

The subroutines in a peripheral card's PROM can change the addresses in the CSW and KSW switches to point to places in the PROM other than the very beginning. For example, a certain PROM could begin with a segment of code to determine what slot it is in and do some initialization, and then jump in to the actual character handling subroutine. As part of its initialization sequence, it could change KSW or CSW (whichever is applicable) to point directly to the beginning of the character handling subroutine. Then the next time the Apple asks for input or output from that card, the handling subroutines will skip the already-done initialization sequence and go right in to the task at hand. This can save time in speed-sensitive situations.

A peripheral card can be used for both input and output if its PROM has separate subroutines for the separate functions and changes CSW and KSW accordingly. The initialization sequence in a peripheral card PROM can determine if it is being called for input or output by looking at the high parts of the CSW and KSW switches. Whichever switch contains \$Cn is currently calling that card to perform its function. If both switches contain \$Cn, then your subroutine should assume that it is being called for output.

EXPANSION ROM

The 2K memory range from location \$C800 to SCFFF is reserved for a 2K ROM or PROM on a peripheral card, to hold large programs or driving subroutines. The expansion ROM space also has the advantage of being absolutely located in the Apple's memory map, which gives you more freedom in writing your interface programs.

This PROM space is available to all peripheral slots, and more than one card in your Apple can have an expansion ROM. However, only one expansion ROM can be active at one time.

Each peripheral card's expansion ROM should have a flip-flop to enable it. This flip-flop should be turned "on" by the DEVICE SELECT signal (the one which enables the 256-byte PROM). This means that the expansion ROM on any card will be partially enabled after you first reference the card it is on. The other enable to the expansion ROM should be the I/O STROBE line, pin 20 on each peripheral connector. This line becomes active whenever the Apple's microprocessor is referencing a location inside the expansion ROM's domain. When this line becomes active, and the aforementioned flip-flop has been turned "on", then the Apple is referencing the expansion ROM on this particular board (see figure 8).

A peripheral card's 256-byte PROM can gain sole access to the expansion ROM space by referring to location \$CFFF in its initialization subroutine. This location is a special location, and all peripheral cards should recognize it as a signal to turn their flip-flops "off" and disable their expansion ROMs. Of course, this will also disable the expansion ROM on the card which is trying to grab the ROM space, but the ROM will be enabled again when the microprocessor gets another instruction from the 256-byte driving PROM. Now the expansion ROM is enabled, and its space is clear. The driving subroutines can then jump directly into the programs in the ROM, where

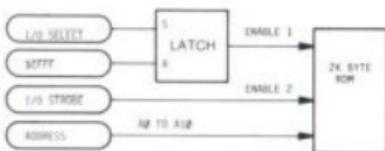


Figure 8. Expansion ROM Enable Circuit

they can enjoy the 2K of unobstructed, absolutely located memory space:

0332-	2C FF CF	BIT	\$CFFF
0335-	4C 00 C8	JMP	\$C800

It is possible to save circuitry (at the expense of ROM space) on the peripheral card by not fully decoding the special location address, \$CFFF. In fact, if you can afford to lose the last 256 bytes of your ROM space, the following simple circuit will do just fine:

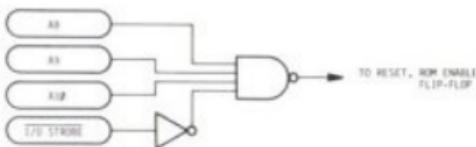


Figure 9. \$CFXX Decoding



CHAPTER 6

HARDWARE CONFIGURATION

- 88 THE MICROPROCESSOR
- 90 SYSTEM TIMING
- 92 POWER SUPPLY
- 94 ROM MEMORY
- 95 RAM MEMORY
- 96 THE VIDEO GENERATOR
- 97 VIDEO OUTPUT JACKS
- 98 BUILT-IN I/O
- 99 "USER 1" JUMPER
- 100 THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR
- 100 THE KEYBOARD
- 102 KEYBOARD CONNECTOR
- 103 CASSETTE INTERFACE JACKS
- 104 POWER CONNECTOR
- 105 SPEAKER
- 105 PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

THE MICROPROCESSOR

The 6502 Microprocessor

Model:	MCS6502/SY6502
Manufactured by:	MOS Technology, Inc. Syntek Rockwell
Number of instructions:	56
Addressing modes:	13
Accumulators:	1 (A)
Index registers:	2 (X,Y)
Other registers:	Stack pointer (S) Processor status (P)
Stack:	256 bytes, fixed
Status flags:	N (sign) C (carry) V (overflow)
Other flags:	I (Interrupt disable) D (Decimal arithmetic) B (Break)
Interrupts:	2 (IRQ, NMI)
Resets:	1 (RES)
Addressing range:	2^{16} (64K) locations
Address bus:	16 bits, parallel
Data bus:	8 bits, parallel Bidirectional
Voltages:	+5 volts
Power dissipation:	.25 watt
Clock frequency:	1.023MHz

The microprocessor gets its main timing signals, Φ_0 and Φ_1 , from the timing circuits described below. These are complimentary 1.023MHz clock signals. Various manuals, including the MOS

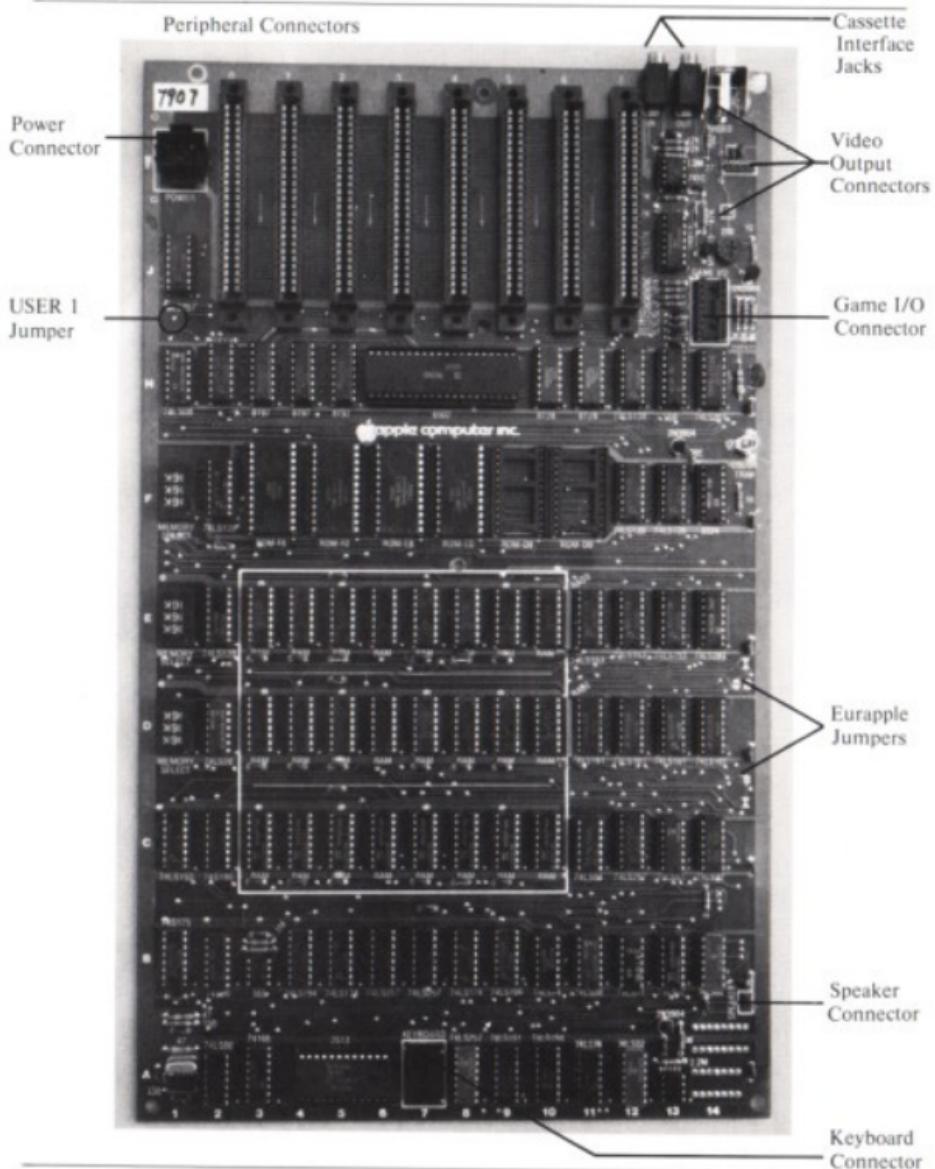


Figure 10. The Apple Main Board

Technology Hardware manual, use the designation $\Phi 2$ for the Apple's $\Phi \emptyset$ clock.

The microprocessor uses its address and data buses only during the time period when $\Phi \emptyset$ is active. When $\Phi \emptyset$ is low, the microprocessor is doing internal operations and does not need the data and address buses.

The microprocessor has a 16-bit address bus and an 8-bit bidirectional data bus. The Address bus lines are buffered by three 8T97 three-state buffers at board locations H3, H4, and H5. The address lines are held open only during a DMA cycle, and are active at all other times. The address on the address bus becomes valid about 300ns after $\Phi 1$ goes high and remains valid through all of $\Phi \emptyset$.

The data bus is buffered through two 8T28 bidirectional three-state buffers at board locations H10 and H11. Data from the microprocessor is put onto the bus about 300ns after $\Phi 1$ and the READ/WRITE signal (R/W) both drop to zero. At all other times, the microprocessor is either listening to or ignoring the data bus.

The RDY, $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ}}$, and $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ lines to the microprocessor are all held high by 3.3K Ohm resistors to +5v. These lines also appear on the peripheral connectors (see page 105).

The SET OVERFLOW (SO) line to the microprocessor is permanently tied to ground.

SYSTEM TIMING

Table 27: Timing Signal Descriptions

14M:	Master Oscillator output, 14.318 MHz. All timing signals are derived from this signal.
7M:	Intermediate timing signal, 7.159 MHz.
COLOR REF:	Color reference frequency, 3.580MHz. Used by the video generation circuitry.
$\Phi \emptyset$ ($\Phi 2$) :	Phase \emptyset system clock, 1.023MHz, compliment to $\Phi 1$.
$\Phi 1$:	Phase 1 system clock, 1.023 MHz, compliment to $\Phi \emptyset$.
Q3:	A general-purpose timing signal, twice the frequency of the system clocks, but asymmetrical.

All peripheral connectors get the timing signals 7M, $\Phi \emptyset$, $\Phi 1$, and Q3. The timing signals 14M and COLOR REF are not available on the peripheral connectors.

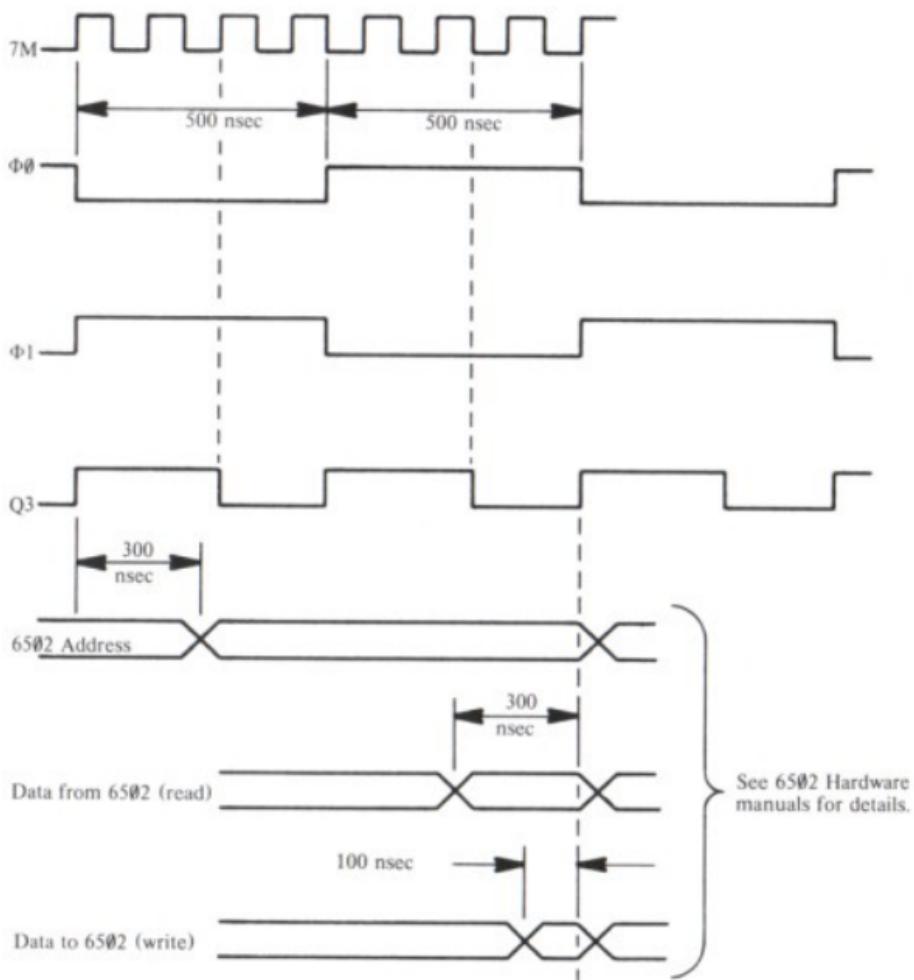


Figure 11. Timing Signals and Relationships

POWER SUPPLY

The Apple Power Supply (U. S. Patent #4,130,862)

Input voltage:	107 VAC to 132 VAC, or 214 VAC to 264 VAC (switch selectable*)
Supply voltages:	+5.0 +11.8 -12.0 -5.2
Power Consumption:	60 watts max. (full load) 79 watts max. (intermittent**)
Full load power output:	+5v: 2.5 amp -5v: 250ma +12v: 1.5 amp (~ 2.5 amp intermittent**) -12v: 250ma
Operating temperature:	55c (131° Farenheit)

The Apple Power Supply is a high-voltage "switching" power supply. While most other power supplies use a large transformer with many windings to convert the input voltage into many lesser voltages and then rectify and regulate these lesser voltages, the Apple power supply first converts the AC line voltage into a DC voltage, and then uses this DC voltage to drive a high-frequency oscillator. The output of this oscillator is fed into a small transformer with many windings. The voltages on the secondary windings are then regulated to become the output voltages.

The +5 volt output voltage is compared to a reference voltage, and the difference error is fed back into the oscillator circuit. When the power supply's output starts to move out of its tolerances, the frequency of the oscillator is altered and the voltages return to their normal levels.

If by chance one of the output voltages of the power supply is short-circuited, a feedback circuit in the power supply stops the oscillator and cuts all output circuits. The power supply then pauses for about $\frac{1}{2}$ second and then attempts to restart the oscillations. If the output is still shorted, it will stop and wait again. It will continue this cycle until the short circuit is removed or the power is turned off.

If the output connector of the power supply is disconnected from the Apple board, the power supply will notice this "no load" condition and effectively short-circuit itself. This activates the protection circuits described above, and cuts all power output. This prevents damage to the power supply's internals.

* The voltage selector switch is not present on some Apples.

** The power supply can run 20 minutes with an intermittent load if followed by 10 minutes at normal load without damage.

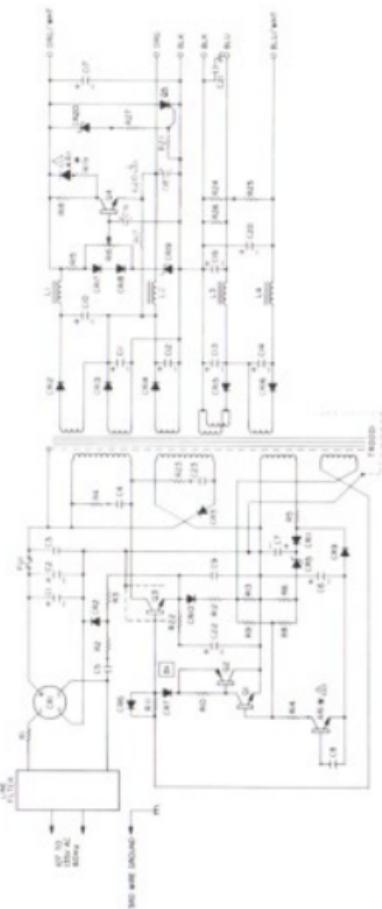


Figure 12. Power Supply Schematic Drawing

If one of the output voltages leaves its tolerance range, due to any problem either within or external to the power supply, it will again shut itself down to prevent damage to the components on the Apple board. This insures that all voltages will either be correct and in proportion, or they will be shut off.

When one of the above fault conditions occurs, the internal protection circuits will stop the oscillations which drive the transformer. After a short while, the power supply will perform a restart cycle, and attempt to oscillate again. If the fault condition has not been removed, the supply will again shut down. This cycle can continue infinitely without damage to the power supply. Each time the oscillator shuts down and restarts, its frequency passes through the audible range and you can hear the power supply squeal and squeak. Thus, when a fault occurs, you will hear a steady "click click click" emanating from the power supply. This is your warning that something is wrong with one of the voltage outputs.

Under no circumstances should you apply more than 140 VAC to the input of the transformer (or more than 280 VAC when the supply's switch is in the 220V position). Permanent damage to the supply will result.

You should connect your Apple's power supply to a properly grounded 3-wire outlet. It is very important that the Apple be connected to a good earth ground.

CAUTION: There are dangerous high voltages inside the power supply's case. Much of the internal circuitry is *not* isolated from the power line, and special equipment is needed for service. **DO NOT ATTEMPT TO REPAIR YOUR POWER SUPPLY!** Send it to your Apple dealer for service.

ROM MEMORY

The Apple can support up to six 2K by 8 mask programmed Read-Only Memory ICs. One of these six ROMs is enabled by a 74LS138 at location F12 on the Apple's board whenever the microprocessor's address bus holds an address between SD~~000~~ and SFFF. The eight Data outputs of all ROMs are connected to the microprocessor's data line buffers, and the ROM's address lines are connected to the buffers driving the microprocessor's address lines A~~0~~ through A1~~0~~.

The ROMs have three "chip select" lines to enable them. CS1 and CS3, both active low, are connected together to the 74LS138 at location F12 which selects the individual ROMs. CS2, which is active high, is common to all ROMs and is connected to the INH (ROM Inhibit) line on the peripheral connectors. If a card in any peripheral slot pulls this line low, all ROMs on the Apple board will be disabled.

The ROMs are similar to type 2316 and 2716 programmable ROMs. However, the chip selects on most of these PROMs are of a different polarity, and they cannot be plugged directly into the Apple board.

A7	I O	24	+5v
A6	2	23	A8
A5	3	22	A9
A4	4	21	CS3
A3	5	20	CS1
A2	6	19	A10
A1	7	18	CS2
A0	8	17	D7
D0	9	16	D6
D1	10	15	D5
D2	11	14	D4
Gnd	12	13	D3

Figure 13. 9316B ROM Pinout.

RAM MEMORY

The Apple uses 4K and 16K dynamic RAMs for its main RAM storage. This RAM memory is used by both the microprocessor and the video display circuitry. The microprocessor and the video display interleave their use of RAM: the microprocessor reads from or writes to RAM only during Φ_0 , and the video display refreshes its screen from RAM memory during Φ_1 .

The three 74LS153s at E11, E12, and E13, the 74LS283 at E14, and half of the 74LS257 at C12 make up the address multiplexer for the RAM memory. They take the addresses generated by the microprocessor and the video generator and multiplex them onto six RAM address lines. The other RAM addressing signals, RAS and CAS, and the signal which is address line 6 for 16K RAMs and CS for 4K RAMs, are generated by the RAM select circuit. This circuit is made up of two 74LS139s at E2 and F2, half of a 74LS153 at location C1, one and a half 74LS257s at C12 and J1, and the three Memory Configuration blocks at D1, E1, and F1. This circuit routes signals to each row of RAM, depending upon what type of RAM (4K or 16K) is in that row.

The dynamic RAMs are refreshed automatically during Φ_1 by the video generator circuitry. Since the video screen is always displaying at least a 1K range of memory, it needs to cycle through every location in that 1K range sixty times a second. It so happens that this action automatically refreshes every bit in all 48K bytes of RAM. This, in conjunction with the interleaving of the video and microprocessor access cycles, lets the video display, the microprocessor, and the RAM refresh run at full speed, without interfering with each other.

The data inputs to the RAMs are drawn directly off of the system's data bus. The data outputs of the RAMs are latched by two 74LS174s at board locations B5 and B8, and are multiplexed with the seven bits of data from the Apple's keyboard. These latched RAM outputs are fed directly to the video generator's character, color, and dot generators, and also back onto the system data bus by two 74LS257s at board locations B6 and B7.

-5v	1 ○	16
Data In	2	15 CAS
R/W	3	14 Data Out
RĀS	4	13 CS
A5	5	12 A2
A4	6	11 A1
A3	7	10 A0
+12v	8	9 +5v

4096 4K RAM
Pinout

-5v	1 ○	16
Data In	2	15 CAS
R/W	3	14 Data Out
RĀS	4	13 A6
A5	5	12 A2
A4	6	11 A1
A3	7	10 A0
+12v	8	9 +5v

4116 16K RAM
Pinout

Figure 14. RAM Pinouts

THE VIDEO GENERATOR

There are 192 scan lines on the video screen, grouped in 24 lines of eight scan lines each. Each scan line displays some or all of the contents of forty bytes of memory.

The video generation circuitry derives its synchronization and timing signals from a chain of 74LS161 counters at board locations D11 through D14. These counters generate fifteen synchronization signals:

H0	H1	H2	H3	H4	H5
V0	V1	V2	V3	V4	
VA	VB	VC			

The "H" family of signals is the horizontal byte position on the screen, from **000000** to binary **100111** (decimal 39). The signals V0 through V4 are the vertical line position on the screen, from binary **00000** to binary **10111** (decimal 23). The VA, VB, and VC signals are the vertical scan line position within the vertical screen line, from binary **000** to 111 (decimal 7).

These signals are sent to the RAM address multiplexer, which turns them into the address of a single RAM location, dependent upon the setting of the video display mode soft switches (see below). The RAM multiplexer then sends this address to the array of RAM memory during Φ1. The latches which hold the RAM data sent by the RAM array reroute it to the video generation circuit. The 74LS283 at location rearranges the memory addresses so that the memory mapping on the screen is scrambled.

If the current area on the screen is to be a text character, then the video generator will route the lower six bits of the data to a type 2513 character generator at location A5. The seven rows in each character are scanned by the VA, VB, and VC signals, and the output of the character generator is serialized into a stream of dots by a 74166 at location A3. This bit stream is routed to an exclusive-OR gate, where it is inverted if the high bit of the data byte is off and either the sixth bit is low or the 555 timer at location B3 is high. This produces inverse and flashing characters. The text bit stream is then sent to the video selector/multiplexer (below).

If the Apple's video screen is in a graphics mode, then the data from RAM is sent to two 74LS194 shift registers at board locations B4 and B9. Here each nibble is turned into a serial data stream. These two data streams are also sent to the video selector/multiplexer.

The 74LS257 multiplexer at board position A8 selects between Color and High-Resolution graphics displays. The serialized Hi-res dot stream is delayed one-half clock cycle by the 74LS74 at location A11 if the high bit of the byte is set. This produces the alternate color set in High-Resolution graphics mode.

The video selector/multiplexer mixes the two data streams from the above sources according to the setting of the video screen soft switches. The 74LS194 at location A10 and the 74LS151 at A9 select one of the serial bit streams for text, color graphics, or high-resolution graphics depending upon the screen mode. The final serial output is mixed with the composite synchronization signal and the color burst signal generated by the video sync circuits, and sent to the video output connectors.

The video display soft switches, which control the video modes, are decoded as part of the Apple's on-board I/O functions. Logic gates in board locations B12, B13, B11, A12, and A11 are used to control the various video modes.

The color burst signal is created by logic gates at B12, B13, and C13 and is conditioned by R5, coil L1, C2, and trimmer capacitor C3. This trimmer capacitor can be tuned to vary the tint of colors produced by the video display. Transistor Q6 and its companion resistor R27 disable the color burst signal when the Apple is displaying text.

VIDEO OUTPUT JACKS

The video signal generated by the aforementioned circuitry is an NTSC compatible, similar to an EIA standard, positive composite video signal which can be fed to any standard closed-circuit or studio video monitor. This signal is available in three places on the Apple board:

RCA Jack. On the back of the Apple board, near the right edge, is a standard RCA phono jack. The sleeve of this jack is connected to the Apple's common ground and the tip is connected to the video output signal through a 200 Ohm potentiometer. This potentiometer can adjust the voltage on this connector from 0 to 1 volt peak.

Auxiliary Video Connector. On the right side of the Apple board near the back is a Molex KK100 series connector with four square pins, .25" tall, on .10" centers. This connector supplies the composite video output and two power supply voltages. This connector is illustrated in figure 15.

Table 28: Auxiliary Video Output Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin	Name	Description
1	GROUND	System common ground; 0 volts.
2	VIDEO	NTSC compatible positive composite video. Black level is about .75 volt, white level about 2.0 volt, sync tip level is 0 volts. Output level is not adjustable. This is not protected against short circuits.
3	+12v	+12 volt power supply.
4	-5v	-5 volt line from power supply.

Auxiliary Video Pin. This single metal wire-wrap pin below the Auxiliary Video Output Connector supplies the same video signal available on that connector. It is meant to be a connection point for Eurapple PAL/SECAM encoder boards.

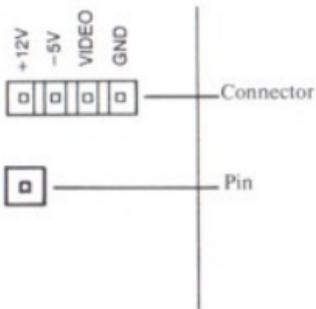


Figure 15. Auxiliary Video Output Connector and Pin.

BUILT-IN I/O

The Apple's built-in I/O functions are mapped into 128 memory locations beginning at \$C000. On the Apple board, a 74LS138 at location F13 called the I/O selector decodes these 128 special addresses and enables the various functions.

The 74LS138 is enabled by another '138 at location H12 whenever the Apple's address bus contains an address between SC000 and SC0FF. The I/O selector divides this 256-byte range into eight sixteen-byte ranges, ignoring the range SC080 through SC0FF. Each output line of the '138 becomes active (low) when its associated 16-byte range is being referenced.

The "0" line from the I/O selector gates the data from the keyboard connector into the RAM data multiplexer.

The "1" line from the I/O selector resets the 74LS74 flip-flop at B10, which is the keyboard flag.

The "2" line toggles one half of a 74LS74 at location K13. The output of this flip-flop is connected through a resistor network to the tip of the cassette output jack.

The "3" line toggles the other half of the 74LS74 at K13. The output of this flip-flop is connected through a capacitor and Darlington amplifier circuit to the Apple's speaker connector on the right edge of the board under the keyboard.

The "4" line is connected directly to pin 5 of the Game I/O connector. This pin is the utility C040 STROBE.

The "5" line is used to enable the 74LS259 at location F14. This IC contains the soft switches for the video display and the Game I/O connector annunciator outputs. The switches are selected

by the address lines 1 through 3 and the setting of each switch is controlled by address line 0.

The "6" line is used to enable a 74LS251 eight-bit multiplexer at location H14. This multiplexer, when enabled, connects one of its eight input lines to the high order bit (bit 7) of the three-state system data bus. The bottom three address lines control which of the eight inputs the multiplexer chooses. Four of the mux's inputs come from a 553 quad timer at location H13. The inputs to this timer are the game controller pins on the Game I/O connector. Three other inputs to the multiplexer come from the single-bit (pushbutton) inputs on the Game I/O connector. The last multiplexer input comes from a 741 operational amplifier at location K13. The input to this op amp comes from the cassette input jack.

The "7" line from the I/O selector resets all four timers in the 553 quad timer at location H13. The four inputs to this timer come from an RC network made up of four $0.022\mu F$ capacitors, four 100 Ohm resistors, and the variable resistors in the game controllers attached to the Game I/O connector. The total resistance in each of the four timing circuits determines the timing characteristics of that circuit.

"USER 1" JUMPER

There is an unlabeled pair of solder pads on the Apple board, to the left of slot 0, called the "User 1" jumper. This jumper is illustrated in Photo 8. If you connect a wire between these two pads, then the USER 1 line on each peripheral connectors becomes active. If any peripheral card pulls this line low, *all* internal I/O decoding is disabled. The I/O SELECT and the DEVICE SELECT lines all go high and will remain high while USER 1 is low, regardless of the address on the address bus.

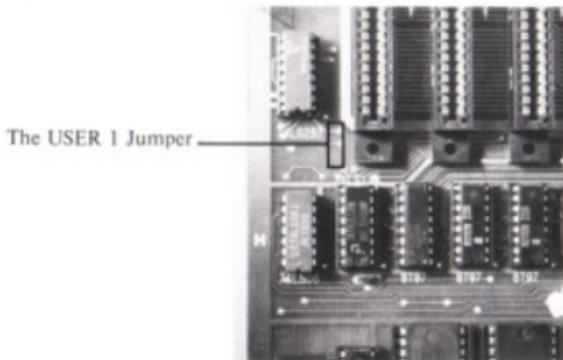


Photo 8. The USER 1 Jumper.

THE GAME I/O CONNECTOR

+5v	1	○	16	NC
PB0	2		15	AN0
PB1	3		14	AN1
PB2	4		13	AN2
C040 STROBE	5		12	AN3
GC0	6		11	GC3
GC2	7		10	GC1
Gnd	8		9	NC

Figure 16.
Game I/O Connector Pinouts

Table 29: Game I/O Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 100mA.
2-4	PB0-PB2	Single-bit (Pushbutton) inputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL inputs.
5	C040 STROBE	A general-purpose strobe. This line, normally high, goes low during $\Phi\#$ of a read or write cycle to any address from \$C040 through \$C04F. This is a standard 74LS TTL output.
6,7,10,11	GC0-GC3	Game controller inputs. These should each be connected through a 150K Ohm variable resistor to +5v.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
12-15	AN0-AN3	Annunciator outputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL outputs and must be buffered if used to drive other than TTL inputs.
9,16	NC	No internal connection.

THE KEYBOARD

The Apple's built-in keyboard is built around a MM5740 monolithic keyboard decoder ROM. The inputs to this ROM, on pins 4 through 12 and 22 through 31, are connected to the matrix of keyswitches on the keyboard. The outputs of this ROM are buffered by a 7404 and are connected to the Apple's Keyboard Connector (see below).

The keyboard decoder rapidly scans through the array of keys on the keyboard, looking for one which is pressed. This scanning action is controlled by the free-running oscillator made up of three sections of a 7400 at keyboard location U4. The speed of this oscillation is controlled by C6, R6, and R7 on the keyboard's printed-circuit board.

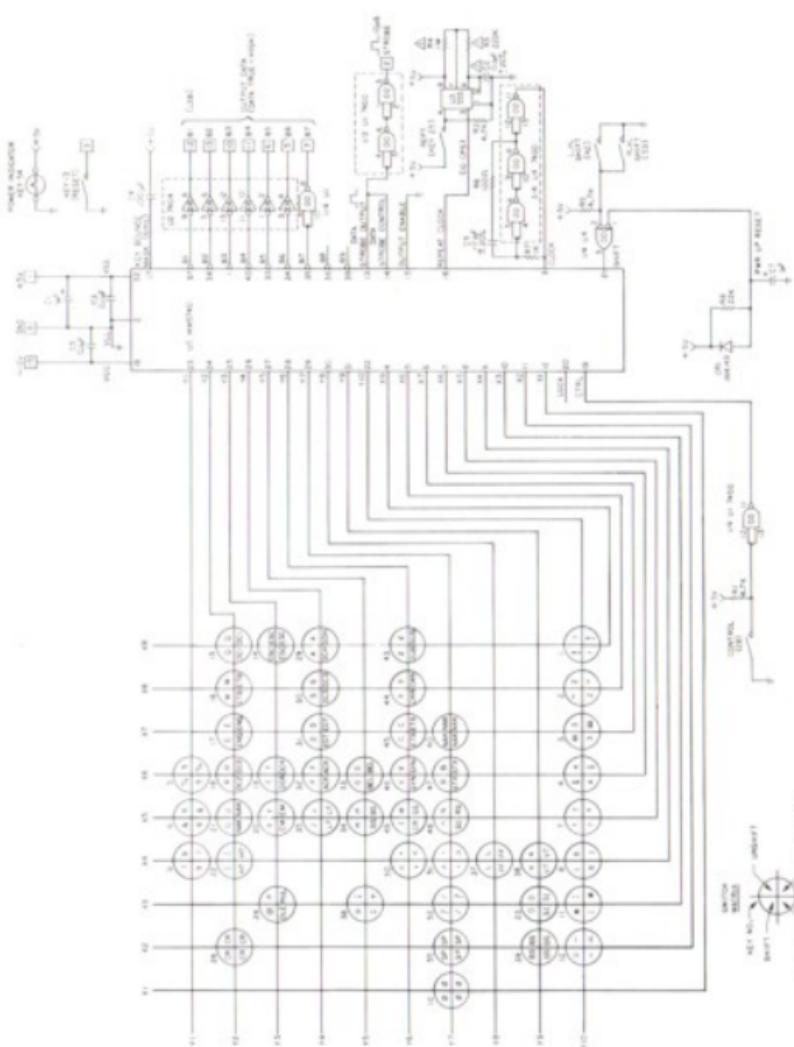


Figure 17. Schematic of the Apple Keyboard

The [REPT] key on the keyboard is connected to a 555 timer circuit at board location U3 on the keyboard. This chip and the capacitor and three resistors around it generate the 10Hz "REPeaT" signal. If the 220K Ohm resistor R3 is replaced with a resistor of a lower value, then the [REPT] key will repeat characters at a faster rate.

See Figure 17 for a schematic diagram of the Apple Keyboard.

KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

The data from the Apple's keyboard goes directly to the RAM data multiplexers and latches, the two 74LS257s at locations B6 and B7. The STROBE line on the keyboard connector sets a 74LS74 flip-flop at location B10. When the I/O selector activates its "0" line, the data which is on the seven inputs on the keyboard connector, and the state of the strobe flip-flop, are multiplexed onto the Apple's data bus.

Table 30: Keyboard Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+ 5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 120mA.
2	STROBE	Strobe output from keyboard. This line should be given a pulse at least 10 μ s long each time a key is pressed on the keyboard. The strobe can be of either polarity.
3	RESET	Microprocessor's RESET line. Normally high, this line should be pulled low when the [RESET] button is pressed.
4,9,16	NC	No connection.
5-7, 10-13	Data	Seven bit ASCII keyboard data input.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
15	-12v	-12 volt power supply. Keyboard should draw less than 50mA.

+5v	<i>1</i>	○	<i>16</i>	NC
STROBE	<i>2</i>		<i>15</i>	-12v
RESET	<i>3</i>		<i>14</i>	NC
NC	<i>4</i>		<i>13</i>	Data 1
Data 5	<i>5</i>		<i>12</i>	Data Ø
Data 4	<i>6</i>		<i>11</i>	Data 3
Data 6	<i>7</i>		<i>10</i>	Data 2
Gnd	<i>8</i>		<i>9</i>	NC

Figure 18.
Keyboard Connector Pinouts

CASSETTE INTERFACE JACKS

The two female miniature phone jacks on the back of the Apple II board can connect your Apple to a normal home cassette tape recorder.

Cassette Input Jack: This jack is designed to be connected to the "Earphone" or "Monitor" output jacks on most tape recorders. The input voltage should be 1 volt peak-to-peak (nominal). The input impedance is 12K Ohms.

Cassette Output Jack: This jack is designed to be connected to the "Microphone" input on most tape recorders. The output voltage is 25mv into a 100 Ohm impedance load.

POWER CONNECTOR

This connector mates with the cable from the Apple Power Supply. This is an AMP #9-35028-1 six-pin male connector.

Table 31: Power Connector Pin Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1,2	Ground	Common electrical ground for Apple board.
3	+5v	+5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~1.5 amp from this supply.
4	+12v	+12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~400ma from this supply.
5	-12v	-12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~12.5ma from this supply.
6	-5v	-5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~0.0ma from this supply.

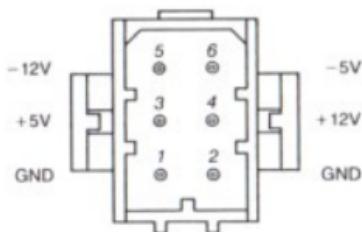


Figure 19. Power Connector

SPEAKER

The Apple's internal speaker is driven by half of a 74LS74 flip-flop through a Darlington amplifier circuit. The speaker connector is a Molex KK100 series connector, with two square pins, .25" tall, on .10" centers.

Table 32: Speaker Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	SPKR	Speaker signal. This line will deliver about .5 watt into an 8 Ohm load.
2	+5v	+5 volt power supply.



Figure 20. Speaker Connector

PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

The eight peripheral connectors along the back edge of the Apple's board are Winchester #2HW25C0-111 50-pin PC card edge connectors with pins on .10" centers. The pinout for these connectors is given in Figure 21, and the signal descriptions are given on the following pages.

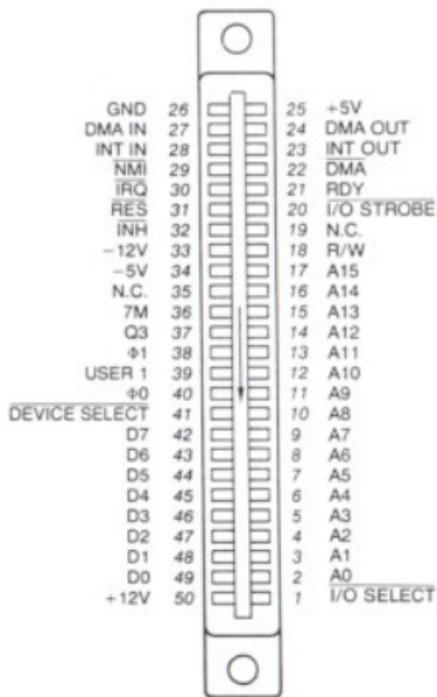


Figure 21. Peripheral Connector Pinout

Table 33: Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	I/O SELECT	This line, normally high, will become low when the microprocessor references page \$C n , where n is the individual slot number. This signal becomes active during Φ_0 and will drive 10 LSTTL loads*. This signal is not present on peripheral connector 0.
2-17	A0-A15	The buffered address bus. The address on these lines becomes valid during Φ_1 and remains valid through Φ_0 . These lines will each drive 5 LSTTL loads*.
18	R/W	Buffered Read/Write signal. This becomes valid at the same time the address bus does, and goes high during a read cycle and low during a write. This line can drive up to 2 LSTTL loads*.
19	SYNC	On peripheral connector 7 <i>only</i> , this pin is connected to the video timing generator's SYNC signal.
20	I/O STROBE	This line goes low during Φ_0 when the address bus contains an address between \$C800 and \$CFFF. This line will drive 4 LSTTL loads*.
21	RDY	The 6502's RDY input. Pulling this line low during Φ_1 will halt the microprocessor, with the address bus holding the address of the current location being fetched.
22	DMA	Pulling this line low disables the 6502's address bus and halts the microprocessor. This line is held high by a 3K Ω resistor to +5v.
23	INT OUT	Daisy-chained interrupt output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 28 (INT IN).
24	DMA OUT	Daisy-chained DMA output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 22 (DMA IN).
25	+5v	+5 volt power supply. 500mA current is available for <i>all</i> peripheral cards.
26	GND	System electrical ground.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
27	DMA IN	Daisy-chained DMA input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 24 (DMA OUT).
26	INT IN	Daisy-chained interrupt input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 23 (INT OUT).
29	NMI	Non-Maskable Interrupt. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle and jumps to the interrupt handling routine at location \$3FB.
30	IRQ	Interrupt ReQuest. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle only if the 6502's I (Interrupt disable) flag is not set. If so, the 6502 will jump to the interrupt handling subroutine whose address is stored in locations \$3FE and \$3FF.
31	RES	When this line is pulled low the microprocessor begins a RESET cycle (see page 36).
32	INH	When this line is pulled low, all ROMs on the Apple board are disabled. This line is held high by a $3K\Omega$ resistor to +5v.
33	-12v	-12 volt power supply. Maximum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
34	-5v	-5 volt power supply. Maximum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
35	COLOR REF	On peripheral connector 7 <i>only</i> , this pin is connected to the 3.5MHz COLOR REFERENCE signal of the video generator.
36	7M	7MHz clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
37	Q3	2MHz asymmetrical clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
38	Φ 1	Microprocessor's phase one clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
39	USER 1	This line, when pulled low, disables <i>all</i> internal I/O address decoding**.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.

** See page 99.

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
40	$\Phi\emptyset$	Microprocessor's phase zero clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
41	<u>DEVICE SELECT</u>	This line becomes active (low) on each peripheral connector when the address bus is holding an address between $SC0n\emptyset$ and $SC0nF$, where n is the slot number plus \$8. This line will drive 10 LSTTL loads*.
42-49	D \emptyset -D7	Buffered bidirectional data bus. The data on this line becomes valid 300nS into $\Phi\emptyset$ on a write cycle, and should be stable no less than 100ns before the end of $\Phi\emptyset$ on a read cycle. Each data line can drive one LSTTL load.
50	+12v	+12 volt power supply. This can supply up to 250mA total for all peripheral cards.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.

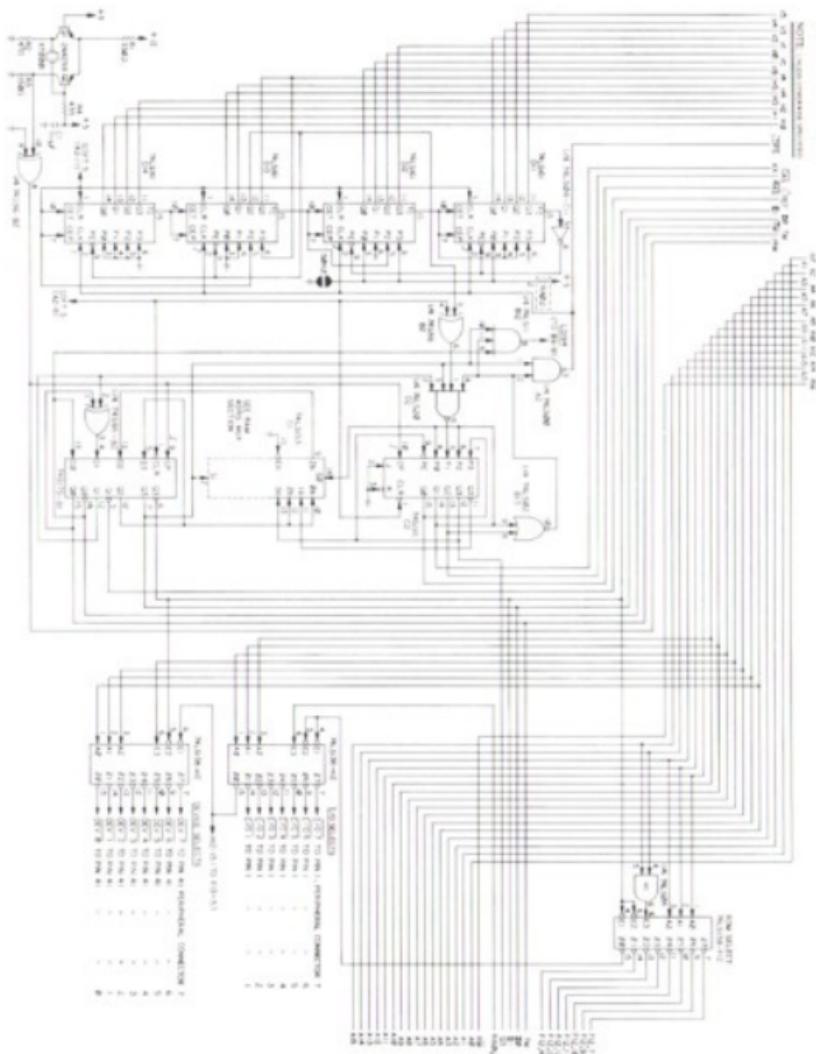


Figure 22-1. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II

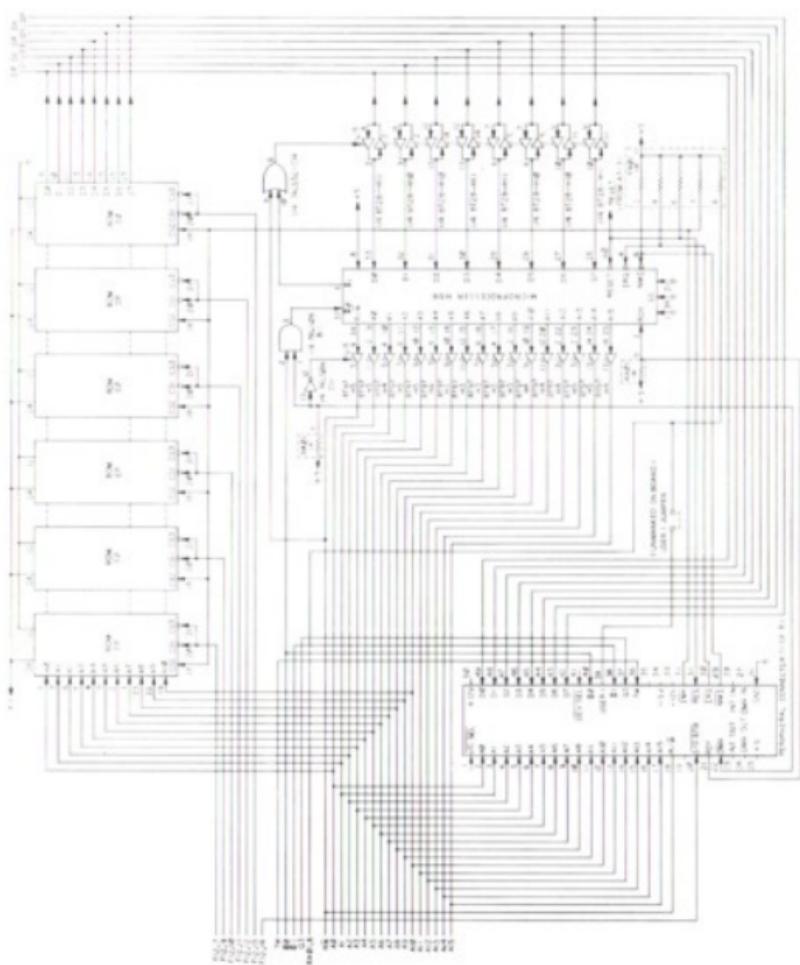


Figure 22-2. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II

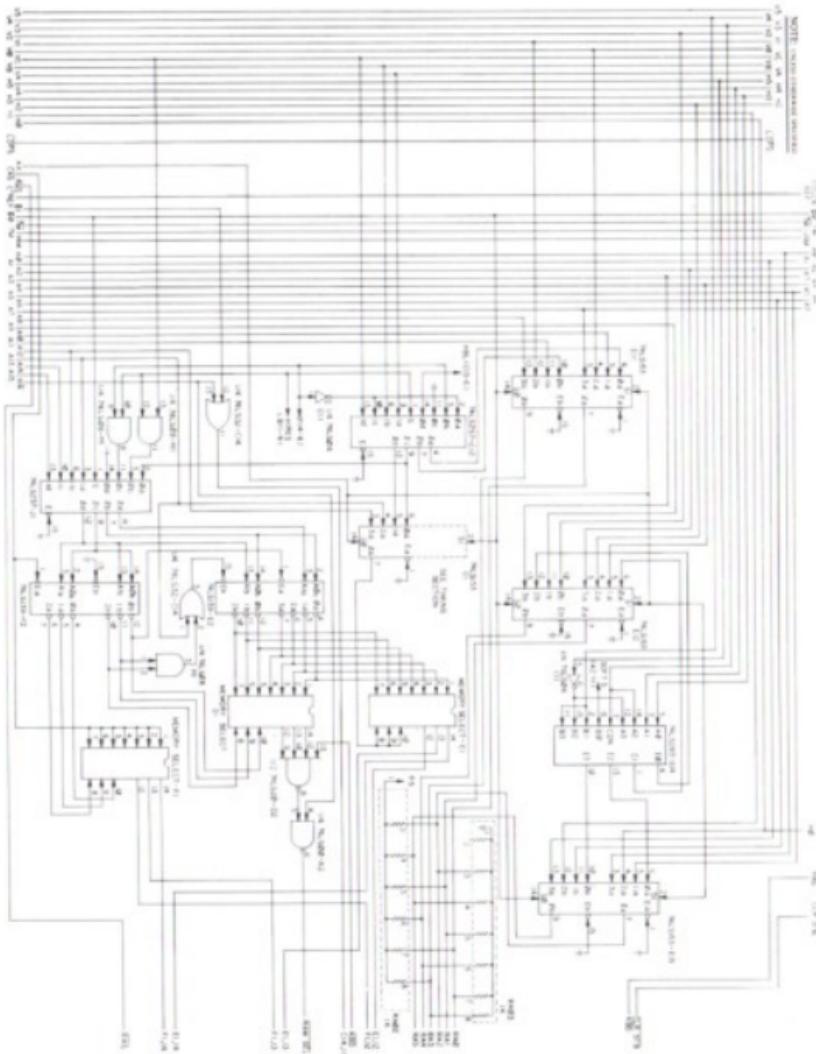


Figure 22-3. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II

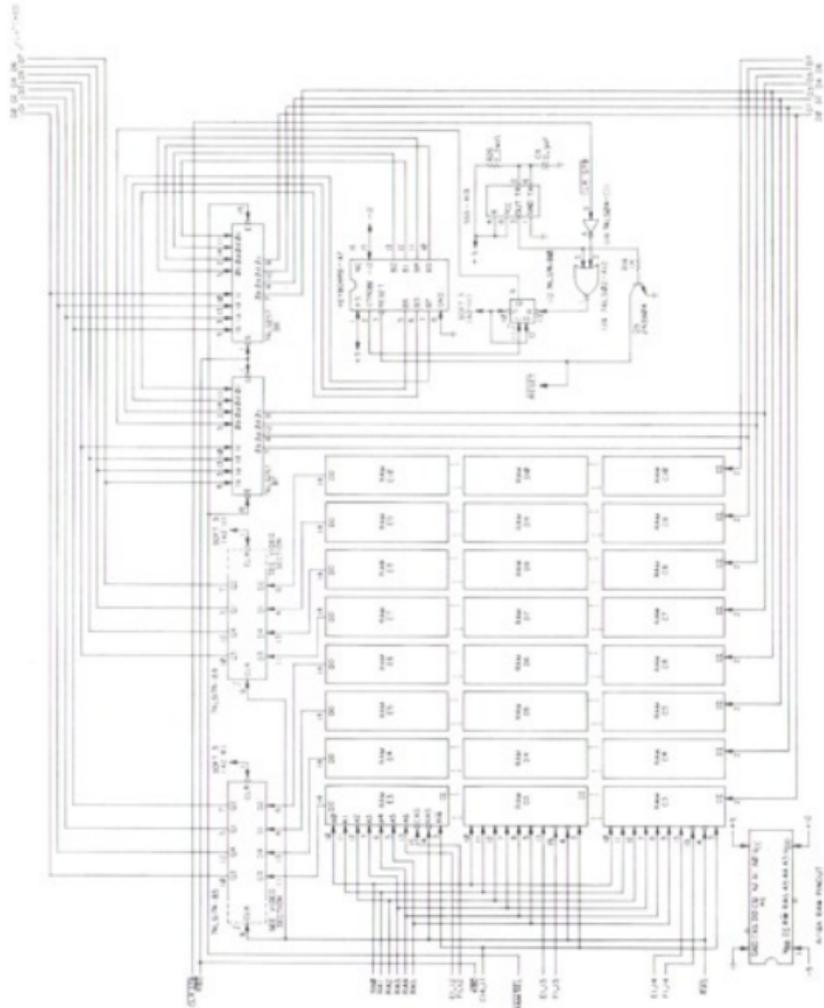


Figure 22-4. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II

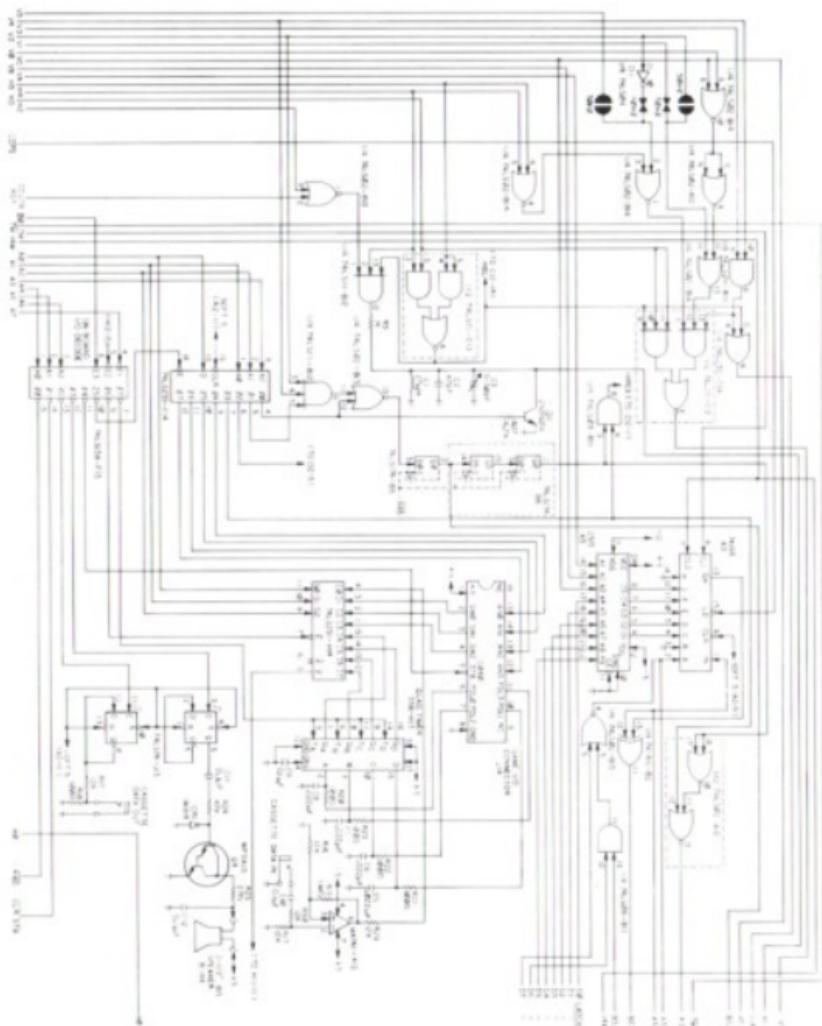


Figure 22-5. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II

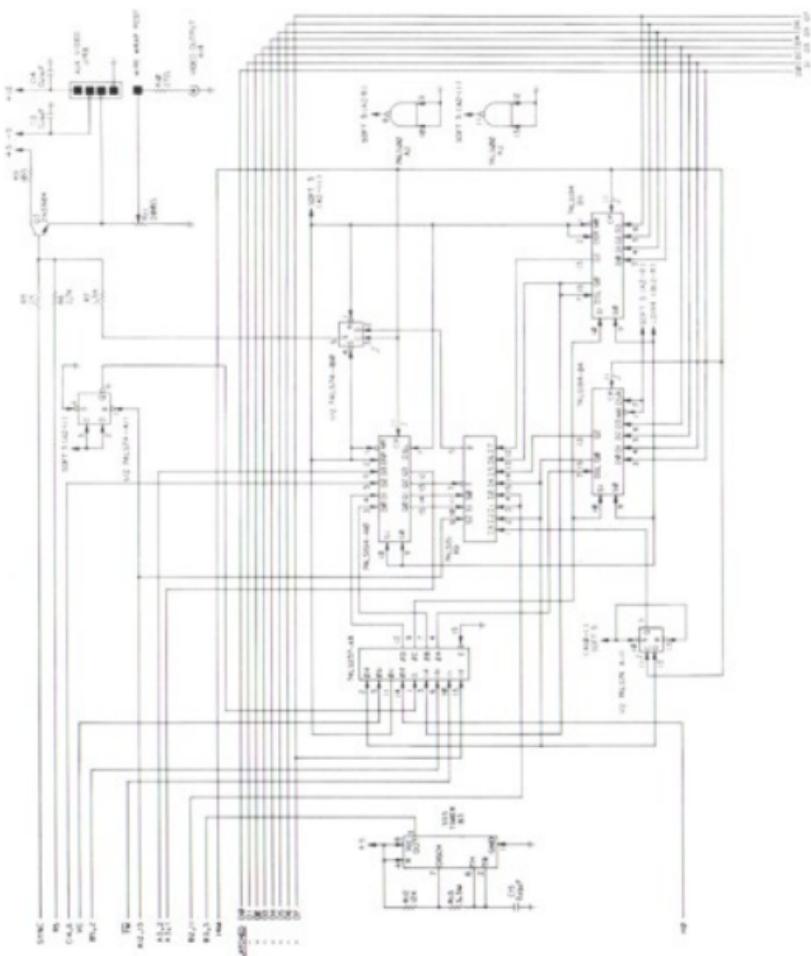


Figure 22-6. Schematic Diagram of the Apple II



APPENDIX A

THE 6502 INSTRUCTION SET

6502 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTIONS

ADC	Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry	LDA	Load Accumulator with Memory
AND	"AND" Memory with Accumulator	LDX	Load Index X with Memory
ASL	Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)	LDY	Load Index Y with Memory
BCC	Branch on Carry Clear	LSR	Shift Right One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
BCS	Branch on Carry Set	NOP	No Operation
BEQ	Branch on Result Zero	ORA	"OR" Memory with Accumulator
BIT	Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator	PHA	Push Accumulator on Stack
BMI	Branch on Result Minus	PHP	Push Processor Status on Stack
BNE	Branch on Result not Zero	PLA	Pull Accumulator from Stack
BPL	Branch on Result Plus	PLP	Pull Processor Status from Stack
BRK	Force Break	ROL	Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)
BVC	Branch on Overflow Clear	ROR	Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or Accumulator)
BVS	Branch on Overflow Set	RTI	Return from Interrupt
CLC	Clear Carry Flag	RTS	Return from Subroutine
CLD	Clear Decimal Mode	SBC	Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow
CLI	Clear Interrupt Disable Bit	SEC	Set Carry Flag
CLV	Clear Overflow Flag	SED	Set Decimal Mode
CMP	Compare Memory and Accumulator	SEI	Set Interrupt Disable Status
CPX	Compare Memory and Index X	STA	Store Accumulator in Memory
CPY	Compare Memory and Index Y	STX	Store Index X in Memory
DEC	Decrement Memory by One	STY	Store Index Y in Memory
DEX	Decrement Index X by One	TAX	Transfer Accumulator to Index X
DEY	Decrement Index Y by One	TAY	Transfer Accumulator to Index Y
EOR	"Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator	TSK	Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X
INC	Increment Memory by One	TXA	Transfer Index X to Accumulator
INX	Increment Index X by One	TXS	Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer
INY	Increment Index Y by One	TYA	Transfer Index Y to Accumulator
JMP	Jump to New Location		
JSR	Jump to New Location Saving Return Address		

THE FOLLOWING NOTATION APPLIES TO THIS SUMMARY:

A	Accumulator
X, Y	Index Registers
M	Memory
C	Borrow
P	Processor Status Register
S	Stack Pointer
✓	Change
-	No Change
+	Add
Λ	Logical AND
-	Subtract
∨	Logical Exclusive Or
↔	Transfer From Stack
↑	Transfer To Stack
→	Transfer To
←	Transfer From
V	Logical OR
PC	Program Counter
PCH	Program Counter High
PCL	Program Counter Low
OPER	Operand
#	Immediate Addressing Mode

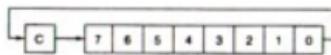
FIGURE 1. ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION



FIGURE 2. ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)



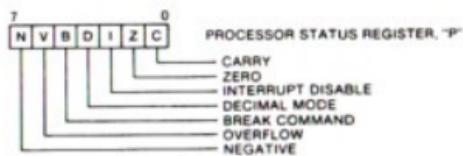
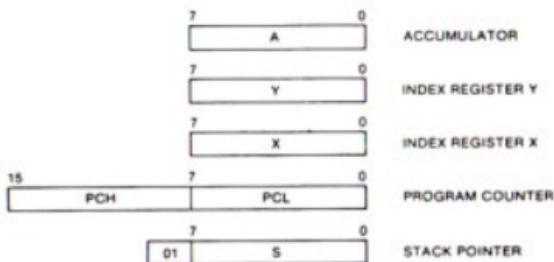
FIGURE 3



NOTE 1: BIT — TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A & M is zero then Z=1, otherwise Z=0.

PROGRAMMING MODEL



INSTRUCTION CODES

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I O V
ADC Add memory to accumulator with carry	A - M - C → A.C	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page.X Absolute Absolute.X Absolute.Y (Indirect.X) (Indirect.Y)	ADC #Oper ADC Oper ADC Oper.X ADC Oper ADC Oper.X ADC Oper.Y ADC (Oper).X ADC (Oper).Y	69 65 75 60 70 79 61 71	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓✓---✓
AND "AND" memory with accumulator	A AND M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page.X Absolute Absolute.X Absolute.Y (Indirect.X) (Indirect.Y)	AND #Oper AND Oper AND Oper.X AND Oper AND Oper.X AND Oper.Y AND (Oper).X AND (Oper).Y	29 25 35 20 30 39 21 31	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓---
ASL Shift left one bit (Memory or Accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page.X Absolute Absolute.X	ASL A ASL Oper ASL Oper.X ASL Oper ASL Oper.X	0A 06 16 0E 1E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓---
BCC Branch on carry clear	Branch on C=0	Relative	BCC Oper	90	2	-----
BCS Branch on carry set	Branch on C=1	Relative	BCS Oper	B0	2	-----
BEQ Branch on result zero	Branch on Z=1	Relative	BEQ Oper	F0	2	-----
BIT Test bits in memory with accumulator	A AND M ₇ → N, M ₀ → V	Zero Page Absolute	BIT# Oper BIT# Oper	24 2C	2 3	M ₇ /---M ₀
BMI	Branch on result minus	Branch on N=1	BMI Oper	30	2	-----
BNE	Branch on result not zero	Branch on Z=0	BNE Oper	D0	2	-----
BPL	Branch on result plus	Branch on N=0	BPL Oper	10	2	-----
BRK	Force Break	Forced Interrupt PC-2 + P+	BRK*	00	1	----1--
BVC	Branch on overflow clear	Branch on V=0	BVC Oper	50	2	-----

Note 1: Bits 4 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A AND M₇ is
Non-zero, 1 otherwise Z = 0

Note 2: A BRK command cannot be masked by setting:

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
BVS Branch on overflow set	Branch on V=1	Relative	BVS Oper	70	2	-----
CLC Clear carry flag	0 → C	Implied	CLC	18	1	----0---
CLD Clear decimal mode	0 → D	Implied	CLD	DB	1	-0-----
CLI	0 → I	Implied	CLI	5B	1	---0--
CLV Clear overflow flag	0 → V	Implied	CLV	BB	1	0-----
CMP Compare memory and accumulator	A → M	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page, X Absolute Absolute, X Absolute, Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	CMP #Oper CMP Oper CMP Oper,X CMP Oper CMP Oper,X CMP Oper,Y CMP (Oper,X) CMP (Oper),Y	C9 C5 D5 CD DB D9 C1 D1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓✓/----
CPX Compare memory and index X	X → M	Immediate Zero Page Absolute	CPX #Oper CPX Oper CPX Oper	E0 E4 EC	2 2 3	✓✓✓/----
CPY Compare memory and index Y	Y → M	Immediate Zero Page Absolute	CPY #Oper CPY Oper CPY Oper	C0 C4 CC	2 2 3	✓✓✓/----
DEC Decrement memory by one	M - 1 → M	Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	DEC Oper DEC Oper,X DEC Oper DEC Oper,X	C6 D6 CE DE	2 2 3 3	✓✓/-----
DEX Decrement index X by one	X - 1 → X	Implied	DEX	CA	1	✓✓/-----
DEY Decrement index Y by one	Y - 1 → Y	Implied	DEY	8B	1	✓✓/-----

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No. Bytes	"F" Status Reg. # Z C I D V
EDR "Exclusive-Or" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	EDR #Oper EDR Oper EDR Oper,X EDR Oper EDR Oper,X EDR Oper,Y EDR (Oper,X) EDR (Oper),Y	49 45 55 4D 5D 5B 41 51	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓-----
INC Increment memory by one	M + 1 → M	Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	INC Oper INC Oper,X INC Oper INC Oper,X	E6 F6 EE FE	2 2 3 3	✓✓-----
INX Increment index X by one	X + 1 → X	implied	INX	E8	1	✓✓-----
INY Increment index Y by one	Y + 1 → Y	implied	INY	C8	1	✓✓-----
JMP Jump to new location	(PC-1) → PCL (PC-2) → PCH	Absolute Indirect	JMP Oper JMP (Oper)	4C 6C	3 3	-----
JSR Jump to new location saving return address	PC+2 ↓ (PC-1) → PCL (PC-2) → PCH	Absolute	JSR Oper	20	3	-----
LDA Load accumulator with memory	M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	LDA #Oper LDA Oper LDA Oper,X LDA Oper LDA Oper,X LDA Oper,Y LDA (Oper,X) LDA (Oper),Y	AB A5 B5 AD BD BB A1 B1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓-----
LDX Load index X with memory	M → X	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,Y Absolute Absolute,X	LDX #Oper LDX Oper LDX Oper,Y LDX Oper LDX Oper,Y	A2 A6 B6 AE BE	2 2 2 3 3	✓✓-----
LDY Load index Y with memory	M → Y	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	LDY #Oper LDY Oper LDY Oper,X LDY Oper LDY Oper,X	A0 A4 B4 AC BC	2 2 2 3 3	✓✓-----

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX Op Code	No. Bytes	'P' Status Reg N Z C I O V
LSR Shift right one bit (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute X	LSR A LSR Oper LSR Oper,X LSR Oper LSR Oper,X	4A 4B 56 4E 5E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓---
NOP No operation	No Operation	Implied	NOP	EA	1	-----
ORA "OR" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	ORA #Oper ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper,Y ORA (Oper) X ORA (Oper) Y	09 05 15 00 1D 19 01 11	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓---
PHA Push accumulator on stack	A ↓	Implied	PHA	48	1	-----
PHP Push processor status on stack	P ↓	Implied	PHP	08	1	-----
PLA Pull accumulator from stack	A ↑	Implied	PLA	68	1	✓✓---
PLP Pull processor status from stack	P ↑	Implied	PLP	28	1	From Stack
RDL Rotate one bit left (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 2)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	RDL A RDL Oper RDL Oper,X RDL Oper RDL Oper,X	2A 2B 36 2E 3E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓✓---
RDR Rotate one bit right (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 3)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	RDR A RDR Oper RDR Oper,X RDR Oper RDR Oper,X	6A 6B 76 6E 7E	1 2 2 3 3	✓✓✓---

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	'P' Status Reg N Z C I O V
RTI Return from interrupt	P + PC +	Implied	RTI	40	1	From Stack
RTS Return from subroutine	PC + PC - 1 → PC	Implied	RTS	60	1	-----
SBC Subtract memory from accumulator with borrow	A - M - C → A	Immediate Zero Page, X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect, X) (Indirect), Y	SBC #Oper SBC Oper SBC Oper, X SBC Oper SBC Oper, X SBC Oper, Y SBC (Oper, X) SBC (Oper), Y	E9 E5 F5 ED FD F9 E1 F1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	✓✓✓---
SEC Set carry flag	1 → C	Implied	SEC	38	1	---- 1 ---
SED Set decimal mode	1 → D	Implied	SED	F8	1	----- 0 --
SEI Set interrupt disable status	1 → I	Implied	SEI	78	1	----- 1 -----
STA Store accumulator in memory	A → M	Zero Page Zero Page, X Absolute Absolute X Absolute Y (Indirect, X) (Indirect), Y	STA Oper STA Oper, X STA Oper STA Oper, X STA Oper, Y STA (Oper, X) STA (Oper), Y	85 86 8D 8D 99 81 91	2 2 3 3 3 2 2	-----
STX Store index X in memory	X → M	Zero Page Zero Page, Y Absolute	STX Oper STX Oper, Y STX Oper	86 96 8E	2 2 3	-----
STY Store index Y in memory	Y → M	Zero Page Zero Page, X Absolute	STY Oper STY Oper, X STY Oper	84 94 8C	2 2 3	-----
TAX Transfer accumulator to index X	A → X	Implied	TAX	AA	1	✓✓-----
TAY Transfer accumulator to index Y	A → Y	Implied	TAY	AB	1	✓✓-----
TSX Transfer stack pointer to index X	S → X	Implied	TSX	BA	1	✓✓-----

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I S V
TXA Transfer index X to accumulator	X \rightarrow A	Implied	TXA	8A	1	$\sqrt{\vee} \cdots \cdots$
TXS Transfer index X to stack pointer	X \rightarrow S	Implied	TXS	9A	1	$\cdots \cdots$
TYA Transfer index Y to accumulator	Y \rightarrow A	Implied	TYA	9B	1	$\sqrt{\vee} \cdots \cdots$

HEX OPERATION CODES

00 — BRK	2F — NOP	SE — LSR — Absolute, X
01 — ORA — Indirect, X	30 — BMI	5F — NOP
02 — NOP	31 — AND — Indirect, Y	60 — RTS
03 — NOP	32 — NOP	61 — ADC — Indirect, X
04 — NOP	33 — NOP	62 — NOP
05 — ORA — Zero Page	34 — NOP	63 — NOP
06 — ASL — Zero Page	35 — AND — Zero Page, X	64 — NOP
07 — NOP	36 — ROL — Zero Page, X	65 — ADC — Zero Page
08 — PHP	37 — NOP	66 — ROR — Zero Page
09 — ORA — Immediate	38 — SEC	67 — NOP
0A — ASL — Accumulator	39 — AND — Absolute, Y	68 — PLA
0B — NOP	3A — NOP	69 — ADC — Immediate
0C — NOP	3B — NOP	6A — ROR — Accumulator
0D — ORA — Absolute	3C — NOP	6B — NOP
0E — ASL — Absolute	3D — AND — Absolute, X	6C — JMP — Indirect
0F — NOP	3E — ROL — Absolute, X	6D — ADC — Absolute
10 — BPL	3F — NOP	6E — ROR — Absolute
11 — ORA — Indirect, Y	40 — RTI	6F — NOP
12 — NOP	41 — EOR — Indirect, X	70 — BVS
13 — NOP	42 — NOP	71 — ADC — Indirect, Y
14 — NOP	43 — NOP	72 — NOP
15 — ORA — Zero Page, X	44 — NOP	73 — NOP
16 — ASL — Zero Page, X	45 — EOR — Zero Page	74 — NOP
17 — NOP	46 — LSR — Zero Page	75 — ADC — Zero Page, X
18 — CLC	47 — NOP	76 — ROR — Zero Page, X
19 — ORA — Absolute, Y	48 — PHA	77 — NOP
1A — NOP	49 — EOR — Immediate	78 — SEI
1B — NOP	4A — LSR — Accumulator	79 — ADC — Absolute, Y
1C — NOP	4B — NOP	7A — NOP
1D — ORA — Absolute, X	4C — JMP — Absolute	7B — NOP
1E — ASL — Absolute, X	4D — EOR — Absolute	7C — NOP
1F — NOP	4E — LSR — Absolute	7D — ADC — Absolute, X NOP
20 — JSR	4F — NOP	7E — ROR — Absolute, X NOP
21 — AND — Indirect, X	50 — BVC	7F — NOP
22 — NOP	51 — EOR — Indirect, Y	80 — NOP
23 — NOP	52 — NOP	81 — STA — Indirect, X
24 — BIT — Zero Page	53 — NOP	82 — NOP
25 — AND — Zero Page	54 — NOP	83 — NOP
26 — ROL — Zero Page	55 — EOR — Zero Page, X	84 — STY — Zero Page
27 — NOP	56 — LSR — Zero Page, X	85 — STA — Zero Page
28 — PLP	57 — NOP	86 — STX — Zero Page
29 — AND — Immediate	58 — CLI	87 — NOP
2A — ROL — Accumulator	59 — EOR — Absolute, Y	88 — DEY
2B — NOP	5A — NOP	89 — NOP
2C — BIT — Absolute	5B — NOP	8A — TXA
2D — AND — Absolute	5C — NOP	8B — NOP
2E — ROL — Absolute	5D — EOR — Absolute, X	8C — STY — Absolute

8D — STA — Absolute
 8E — STX — Absolute
 8F — NOP
 90 — BCC
 91 — STA — (Indirect), Y
 92 — NOP
 93 — NOP
 94 — STY — Zero Page, X
 95 — STA — Zero Page, X
 96 — STX — Zero Page, Y
 97 — NOP
 98 — TYA
 99 — STA — Absolute, Y
 9A — TXS
 9B — NOP
 9C — NOP
 9D — STA — Absolute, X
 9E — NOP
 9F — NOP
 A0 — LDY — Immediate
 A1 — LDA — (Indirect), X
 A2 — LDX — Immediate
 A3 — NOP
 A4 — LDY — Zero Page
 A5 — LDA — Zero Page
 A6 — LDX — Zero Page
 A7 — NOP
 A8 — TAY
 A9 — LDA — Immediate
 AA — TAX
 AB — NOP
 AC — LDY — Absolute
 AD — Absolute
 AE — LDX — Absolute
 AF — NOP
 B0 — BCS
 B1 — LDA — (Indirect), Y
 B2 — NOP
 B3 — NOP

B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X
 B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X
 B6 — LOX — Zero Page, Y
 B7 — NOP
 B8 — CLV
 B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y
 BA — TSX
 BB — NOP
 BC — LDY — Absolute, X
 BD — LDA — Absolute, X
 BE — LDX — Absolute, Y
 BF — NOP
 C0 — CPY — Immediate
 C1 — CMP — (Indirect), X
 C2 — NOP
 C3 — NOP
 C4 — CPY — Zero Page
 C5 — CMP — Zero Page
 C6 — DEC — Zero Page
 C7 — NOP
 C8 — INY
 C9 — CMP — Immediate
 CA — DEX
 CB — NOP
 CC — CPY — Absolute
 CD — CMP — Absolute
 CE — DEC — Absolute
 CF — NOP
 DD — BNE
 D1 — CMP — (Indirect), Y
 D2 — NOP
 D3 — NOP
 D4 — NOP
 D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X
 D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X
 D7 — NOP
 D8 — CLD
 D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y
 DA — NOP

DB — NOP
 DC — NOP
 DD — CMP — Absolute, X
 DE — DEC — Absolute, X
 DF — NOP
 E0 — CPX — Immediate
 E1 — SBC — (Indirect), X
 E2 — NOP
 E3 — NOP
 E4 — CPX — Zero Page
 E5 — SBC — Zero Page
 E6 — INC — Zero Page
 E7 — NOP
 E8 — INX
 E9 — SBC — Immediate
 EA — NOP
 EB — NOP
 EC — CPX — Absolute
 ED — SBC — Absolute
 EE — INC — Absolute
 EF — NOP
 F0 — BEQ
 F1 — SBC — (Indirect), Y
 F2 — NOP
 F3 — NOP
 F4 — NOP
 F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X
 F6 — INC — Zero Page, X
 F7 — NOP
 F8 — SED
 F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y
 FA — NOP
 FB — NOP
 FC — NOP
 FD — SBC — Absolute, X
 FE — INC — Absolute, X
 FF — NOP

APPENDIX B

SPECIAL LOCATIONS

Table 1: Keyboard Special Locations

Location:		Description:	
Hex	Decimal		
\$C000	49152	-16384	Keyboard Data
\$C010	49168	-16368	Clear Keyboard Strobe

Table 4: Video Display Memory Ranges

Screen	Page	Begins at:	Ends at:	Decimal
		Hex	Decimal	
Text/Lo-Res	Primary	\$400	1024	\$7FF
	Secondary	\$800	2048	\$BFF
Hi-Res	Primary	\$2000	8192	\$3FFF
	Secondary	\$4000	16384	\$5FFF
				16383
				24575

Table 5: Screen Soft Switches

Location:		Description:
Hex	Decimal	
\$C050	49232	-16304
\$C051	49233	-16303
\$C052	49234	-16302
\$C053	49235	-16301
\$C054	49236	-16300
\$C055	49237	-16299
\$C056	49238	-16298
\$C057	49239	-16297
		Display a GRAPHICS mode.
		Display TEXT mode.
		Display all TEXT or GRAPHICS.
		Mix TEXT and a GRAPHICS mode.
		Display the Primary page (Page 1).
		Display the Secondary page (Page 2).
		Display LO-RES GRAPHICS mode.
		Display HI-RES GRAPHICS mode.

Table 9: Announcer Special Locations

Ann.	State	Address:		
		Decimal	Hex	
0	off	49240	-16296	\$C058
	on	49241	-16295	\$C059
1	off	49242	-16294	\$C05A
	on	49243	-16293	\$C05B
2	off	49244	-16292	\$C05C
	on	49245	-16291	\$C05D
3	off	49246	-16290	\$C05E
	on	49247	-16289	\$C05F

Table 10: Input/Output Special Locations

Function	Address:		Read/Write
	Decimal	Hex	
Speaker	49200	-16336	\$C030
Cassette Out	49184	-16352	\$C020
Cassette In	49256	-16288	\$C060
			R
Annunciators	49240 through 49247	-16296 through -16289	\$C058 through \$C05F
			R/W
Flag inputs	49249	-16287	\$C061
	49250	-16286	\$C062
	49251	-16285	\$C063
Analog Inputs	49252	-16284	\$C064
	49253	-16283	\$C065
	49254	-16282	\$C066
	49255	-16281	\$C067
Analog Clear	49264	-16272	\$C070
Utility Strobe	49216	-16320	\$C040
			R

Table 11: Text Window Special Locations

Function	Location:	Minimum/Normal/Maximum Value	
	Decimal	Hex	Decimal Hex
Left Edge	32	\$20	0/0/\$17
Width	33	\$21	0/40/\$28
Top Edge	34	\$22	0/0/\$18
Bottom Edge	35	\$23	0/24/\$18

Table 12: Normal/Inverse Control Values

Value:	Effect:	
Decimal	Hex	
255	\$FF	COUT will display characters in Normal mode.
63	\$3F	COUT will display characters in Inverse mode.
127	\$7F	COUT will display letters in Flashing mode, all other characters in Inverse mode.

Table 13: Autostart ROM Special Locations

Location:	Contents:	
Decimal	Hex	
1010	\$3F2	Soft Entry Vector. These two locations contain the address of the reentry point for whatever language is in use. Normally contains \$E003.
1011	\$3F3	
1012	\$3F4	Power-Up Byte. Normally contains \$45.
64367 (-1169)	\$FB6F	This is the beginning of a machine language subroutine which sets up the power-up location.

Table 14: Page Three Monitor Locations

Address: Decimal	Hex	Use: Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
1008 1009	\$3F0 \$3F1	None.	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles machine language "BRK" requests (normally \$FA59).
1010 1011	\$3F2 \$3F3	None.	Soft Entry Vector.
1012	\$3F4	None.	Power-up byte.
1013 1014 1015	\$3F5 \$3F6 \$3F7	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Applesoft II "&" commands. Normally \$4C \$58 \$FF.	
1016 1017 1018	\$3F8 \$3F9 \$3FA	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles "User" (CTRL Y) commands.	
1019 1020 1021	\$3FB \$3FC \$3FD	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Non-Maskable Interrupts.	
1022 1023	\$3FE \$3FF	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles Interrupt ReQuests.	

Table 22: Built-In I/O Locations

	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
SC000	Keyboard Data Input															
SC010	Clear Keyboard Strobe															
SC020	Cassette Output Toggle															
SC030	Speaker Toggle															
SC040	Utility Strobe															
SC050	gr	tx	nomix	mix	pri	sec	lores	hiress	an#		an1		an2		an3	
SC060	cin	pbl	pb2	pb3	gc#	gc1	gc2	gc3					repeat SC060-SC067			
SC070	Game Controller Strobe															

Key to abbreviations:

gr	Set GRAPHICS mode	tx	Set TEXT mode
nomix	Set all text or graphics	mix	Mix text and graphics
pri	Display primary page	sec	Display secondary page
lores	Display Low-Res Graphics	hiress	Display Hi-Res Graphics
an	Annunciator outputs	pb	Pushbutton inputs
gc	Game Controller inputs	cin	Cassette Input

Table 23: Peripheral Card I/O Locations

	\$0	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$4	\$5	\$6	\$7	\$8	\$9	\$A	\$B	\$C	\$D	\$E	\$F
SC080															0	
SC090															1	
SC0A0															2	
SC0B0															3	
SC0C0															4	
SC0D0															5	
SC0E0															6	
SC0F0															7	

Table 24: Peripheral Card PROM Locations

	\$00	\$10	\$20	\$30	\$40	\$50	\$60	\$70	\$80	\$90	\$A0	\$B0	\$C0	\$D0	\$E0	\$F0
SC100															1	
SC200															2	
SC300															3	
SC400															4	
SC500															5	
SC600															6	
SC700															7	

Table 25: I/O Location Base Addresses

Base Address	Slot								I/O Locations
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
SC080	SC080	SC090	SC0A0	SC0B0	SC0C0	SC0D0	SC0E0	SC0F0	
SC081	SC081	SC091	SC0A1	SC0B1	SC0C1	SC0D1	SC0E1	SC0F1	
SC082	SC082	SC092	SC0A2	SC0B2	SC0C2	SC0D2	SC0E2	SC0F2	
SC083	SC083	SC093	SC0A3	SC0B3	SC0C3	SC0D3	SC0E3	SC0F3	
SC084	SC084	SC094	SC0A4	SC0B4	SC0C4	SC0D4	SC0E4	SC0F4	
SC085	SC085	SC095	SC0A5	SC0B5	SC0C5	SC0D5	SC0E5	SC0F5	
SC086	SC086	SC096	SC0A6	SC0B6	SC0C6	SC0D6	SC0E6	SC0F6	
SC087	SC087	SC097	SC0A7	SC0B7	SC0C7	SC0D7	SC0E7	SC0F7	
SC088	SC088	SC098	SC0A8	SC0B8	SC0C8	SC0D8	SC0E8	SC0F8	
SC089	SC089	SC099	SC0A9	SC0B9	SC0C9	SC0D9	SC0E9	SC0F9	
SC08A	SC08A	SC09A	SC0AA	SC0BA	SC0CA	SC0DA	SC0EA	SC0FA	
SC08B	SC08B	SC09B	SC0AB	SC0BB	SC0CB	SC0DB	SC0EB	SC0FB	
SC08C	SC08C	SC09C	SC0AC	SC0BC	SC0CC	SC0DC	SC0EC	SC0FC	
SC08D	SC08D	SC09D	SC0AD	SC0BD	SC0CD	SC0DD	SC0ED	SC0FD	
SC08E	SC08E	SC09E	SC0AE	SC0BE	SC0CE	SC0DE	SC0EE	SC0FE	
SC08F	SC08F	SC09F	SC0AF	SC0BF	SC0CF	SC0DF	SC0EF	SC0FF	

Table 26: I/O Scratchpad RAM Addresses

Base Address	Slot Number						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
\$0478	\$0479	\$047A	\$047B	\$047C	\$047D	\$047E	\$047F
\$04F8	\$04F9	\$04FA	\$04FB	\$04FC	\$04FD	\$04FE	\$04FF
\$0578	\$0579	\$057A	\$057B	\$057C	\$057D	\$057E	\$057F
\$05F8	\$05F9	\$05FA	\$05FB	\$05FC	\$05FD	\$05FE	\$05FF
\$0678	\$0679	\$067A	\$067B	\$067C	\$067D	\$067E	\$067F
\$06F8	\$06F9	\$06FA	\$06FB	\$06FC	\$06FD	\$06FE	\$06FF
\$0778	\$0779	\$077A	\$077B	\$077C	\$077D	\$077E	\$077F
\$07F8	\$07F9	\$07FA	\$07FB	\$07FC	\$07FD	\$07FE	\$07FF

APPENDIX C

ROM LISTINGS

136 AUTOSTART ROM LISTING

155 MONITOR ROM LISTING

AUTOSTART ROM LISTING

```
0000:          2 ****
0000:          3 *
0000:          4 * APPLE II
0000:          5 * MONITOR II
0000:          6 *
0000:          7 * COPYRIGHT 1978 BY
0000:          8 * APPLE COMPUTER, INC.
0000:          9 *
0000:         10 * ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
0000:         11 *
0000:         12 * STEVE WOZNIAK
0000:         13 *
0000:         14 ****
0000:         15 *
0000:         16 * MODIFIED NOV 1978
0000:         17 * BY JOHN A
0000:         18 *
0000:         19 ****
F800:        20 ORG $F800
F800:        21 OBJ $2000
F800:        22 ****
F800:        23 LDCC EQU $00
F800:        24 LOC1 EQU $01
F800:        25 WNDLFT EQU $20
F800:        26 WNDHDTN EQU $21
F800:        27 WNDTOP EQU $22
F800:        28 WNDBTM EQU $23
F800:        29 CH EQU $24
F800:        30 CV EQU $25
F800:        31 QBAQL EQU $26
F800:        32 QBASH EQU $27
F800:        33 BASL EQU $28
F800:        34 BASH EQU $29
F800:        35 BAS2L EQU $2A
F800:        36 BAS2H EQU $2B
F800:        37 H2 EQU $2C
F800:        38 LMNEM EQU $2C
F800:        39 V2 EQU $2D
F800:        40 RMNEM EQU $2D
F800:        41 MASK EQU $2E
F800:        42 CKSUM EQU $2E
F800:        43 FORMAT EQU $2E
F800:        44 LASTIN EQU $2F
F800:        45 LENGTH EQU $2F
F800:        46 SIGN EQU $2F
F800:        47 COLOR EQU $30
F800:        48 MODE EQU $31
F800:        49 INVFLQ EQU $32
F800:        50 PROMPT EQU $33
F800:        51 YSAV EQU $34
F800:        52 YSAV1 EQU $35
F800:        53 CSHL EQU $36
F800:        54 CSHH EQU $37
F800:        55 KSHL EQU $38
F800:        56 KSHH EQU $39
F800:        57 PCL EQU $3A
F800:        58 PCH EQU $3B
F800:        59 A1L EQU $3C
F800:        60 A1H EQU $3D
F800:        61 A2L EQU $3E
F800:        62 A2H EQU $3F
F800:        63 A3L EQU $40
F800:        64 A3H EQU $41
F800:        65 A4L EQU $42
F800:        66 A4H EQU $43
F800:        67 A5L EQU $44
F800:        68 A5H EQU $45
```

```

F800       69 ACC      EQU $45      ; NOTE OVERLAP WITH ASH!
F800       70 XREQ     EQU $46
F800       71 YREQ     EQU $47
F800       72 STATUS    EQU $48
F800       73 SPNT     EQU $49
F800       74 RNDL     EQU $4E
F800       75 RNDH     EQU $4F
F800       76 PICK     EQU $95
F800       77 IN       EQU *$0200
F800       78 BRKV     EQU *$3F0   ; NEW VECTOR FOR DRK
F800       79 SOFTEV    EQU *$3F2   ; VECTOR FOR WARM START
F800       80 PWREDUP   EQU *$3F4   ; THIS MUST = EOR ##AS OF SOFTEV+1
F800       81 AMPERV    EQU *$3F5   ; APPLESOFT & EXIT VECTOR
F800       82 USRADR   EQU *$03F8
F800       83 NMI      EQU *$03F8
F800       84 IRGLDC   EQU *$3FE
F800       85 LINE1    EQU *$400
F800       86 MSLOT    EQU *$07FB
F800       87 IODADR   EQU *$C000
F800       88 KBD      EQU *$C000
F800       89 KBDSTRB  EQU *$C010
F800       90 TAPEOUT  EQU *$C020
F800       91 SPKRN    EQU *$C030
F800       92 TXTCLR   EQU *$C050
F800       93 TXTSET   EQU *$C051
F800       94 MIXCLR   EQU *$C052
F800       95 MIXSET   EQU *$C053
F800       96 LOWSCR   EQU *$C054
F800       97 HISCR    EQU *$C055
F800       98 LORES    EQU *$C056
F800       99 HIRES    EQU *$C057
F800      100 SETANO   EQU *$C058
F800      101 CLRANO   EQU *$C059
F800      102 SETAN1   EQU *$C05A
F800      103 CLRAN1  EQU *$C05B
F800      104 SETAN2   EQU *$C05C
F800      105 CLRAN2  EQU *$C05D
F800      106 SETAN3   EQU *$C05E
F800      107 CLRAN3  EQU *$C05F
F800      108 TAPEIN   EQU *$C060
F800      109 PADDLO   EQU *$C064
F800      110 PTRIG    EQU *$C070
F800      111 CLRRDM   EQU *$CFFF
F800      112 BASIC    EQU *$E000
F800      113 BASIC2   EQU *$E003
F800      114 PAGE     EQU *$E004
F800: 4A 115 PLDT    LSR A
F801: 08 116 PHP
F802: 20 47 FB 117 JSR GBASCALC
F805: 28 118 PLP
F806: A9 0F 119 LDA ##OF
F808: 90 02 120 BCC RTMASK
F80A: 69 E0 121 ADC ##EO
F80C: 85 2E 122 RTMASK STA MASK
F80E: 81 26 123 PLDT1 LDA (GBASL),Y
F810: 45 30 124 EOR COLOR
F812: 25 2E 125 AND MASK
F814: 51 26 126 EOR (GBASL),Y
F816: 91 26 127 STA (GBASL),Y
F818: 60 128 RTS
F819: 20 00 FB 129 HLINE JSR PLOT
F81C: C4 2C 130 HLINE1 CPY H2
F81E: 80 11 131 BCS RTS1
F820: CB 132 INV
F821: 20 0E FB 133 JSR PLOT1
F824: 90 F6 134 BCC HLINE1
F826: 69 01 135 VLINEZ ADC ##01
F828: 48 136 VLINE PHA
F829: 20 00 FB 137 JSR PLOT
F82C: 68 138 PLA
F82D: C5 2D 139 CMP V2
F82F: 90 F5 140 BCC VLINEZ
F831: 60 141 RTS1 RTS

```

F832:	A0 2F	142	CLRSCR	LDY #\$2F
F834:	D0 02	143		BNE CLRSC2
F836:	A0 27	144	CLRTOP	LDY #\$27
F838:	B4 2D	145	CLRSC2	STY V2
F83A:	A0 27	146		LDY #\$27
F83C:	A9 00	147	CLRSC3	LDA #\$00
F83E:	B5 30	148		STA COLOR
F840:	20 28 FB	149		JSR VLINIE
F843:	88	150		DEY
F844:	10 F6	151		BPL CLRSC3
F846:	60	152		RTS
F847:		153		PAGE
F847:	48	154	GBASCALC	PHA
F848:	4A	155		LSR A
F849:	29 03	156		AND #\$03
F84B:	09 04	157		ORA #\$04
F84D:	B5 27	158		STA GBASH
F84F:	68	159		PLA
F850:	29 18	160		AND #\$18
F852:	90 02	161		BCC GB CALC
F854:	69 7F	162		ADC #\$7F
F856:	B5 26	163	GBCALC	STA GBASL
F858:	04	164		ASL A
F859:	0A	165		ASL A
F85A:	05 26	166		ORA GBASL
F85C:	B5 26	167		STA GBASL
F85E:	60	168		RTS
F85F:	A5 30	169		LDA COLOR
F861:	18	170		CLC
F862:	69 03	171		ADC #\$03
F864:	29 0F	172	SETCOL	AND #\$0F
F866:	B5 30	173		STA COLOR
F868:	04	174		ASL A
F869:	0A	175		ASL A
F86A:	0A	176		ASL A
F86B:	0A	177		ASL A
F86C:	05 30	178		ORA COLOR
F86E:	B5 30	179		STA COLOR
F870:	60	180		RTS
F871:	4A	181	SCRN	LSR A
F872:	08	182		PHP
F873:	20 47 FB	183		JSR GBASCALC
F876:	B1 26	184		LDA (GBASL), Y
F878:	28	185		PLP
F879:	90 04	186	SCRN2	BCC RTMSKZ
F87B:	4A	187		LSR A
F87C:	4A	188		LSR A
F87D:	4A	189		LSR A
F87E:	4A	190		LSR A
F87F:	29 0F	191	RTMSKZ	AND #\$0F
F881:	60	192		RTS
F882:		193		PAGE
F882:	A6 3A	194	INSD51	LDX PCL
F884:	A4 38	195		LDY PCH
F886:	20 96 FD	196		JSR PRYX2
F889:	20 48 F9	197		JSR PRBLNK
F88C:	A1 3A	198	INSD52	LDA (PCL, X)
F88E:	A8	199		TAY
F88F:	4A	200		LSR A
F890:	90 09	201		BCC IEVEN
F892:	6A	202		RDR A
F893:	B0 10	203		BCS ERR
F895:	C9 A2	204		CMP #\$A2
F897:	F0 0C	205		BEG ERR
F899:	29 B7	206		AND #\$B7
F89B:	4A	207	IEVEN	LSR A
F89C:	AA	208		TAX
F89D:	BD 62 F9	209		LDA FMT1, X
F8A0:	20 79 FB	210		JSR SCRNZ
F8A3:	D0 04	211		BNE GETFMT
F8A5:	A0 B0	212	ERR	LDY ***B0
F8A7:	A9 00	213		LDA ***00
F8A9:	AA	214	GETFMT	TAX

F8AA:	BD A6 F9	215	LDA FMT2,X
F8AD:	B5 2E	216	STA FORMAT
F8AF:	29 03	217	AND #\$03
F8B1:	B5 2F	218	STA LENGTH
F8B3:	98	219	TYA
F8B4:	29 BF	220	AND #\$BF
F8B6:	AA	221	TAX
F8B7:	98	222	TYA
F8BB:	A0 03	223	LDY #\$03
F8BA:	E0 8A	224	CPX #\$BA
F8BC:	F0 0B	225	BEG MNNDX3
F8BE:	4A	226	MNNDX1 LSR A
F8BF:	90 0B	227	BCC MNNDX3
F8C1:	4A	228	LSR A
F8C2:	4A	229	MNNDX2 LSR A
F8C3:	09 20	230	DRA #\$20
F8C5:	BB	231	DEY
F8C6:	D0 FA	232	BNE MNNDX2
F8CB:	CB	233	INY
F8C9:	BB	234	MNNDX3 DEY
F8CA:	D0 F2	235	BNE MNNDX1
F8CD:	60	236	RTS
F8D0:	FF FF FF	237	DFB \$FF,\$FF,\$FF
F8D0:		238	PAGE
F8D0:	20 B2 FB	239	INSTDSP JSR INSDS1
F8D3:	4B	240	PHA
F8D4:	B1 3A	241	PRNTOP LDA (PCL),Y
F8D6:	20 DA FD	242	JSR PRBYTE
F8D9:	A2 01	243	LDX #\$01
F8DB:	20 4A F9	244	PRNTBL JSR PRBL2
F8DE:	C4 2F	245	CPY LENGTH
F8E0:	CB	246	INY
F8E1:	90 F1	247	BCC PRNTOP
F8E3:	A2 03	248	LDX #\$03
F8E5:	C0 04	249	CPY #\$04
F8E7:	90 F2	250	BCC PRNTBL
F8E9:	6B	251	PLA
F8EA:	AB	252	TAY
F8EB:	39 C0 F9	253	LDA MNEML,Y
F8EE:	B5 2C	254	STA LMNEM
F8F0:	B9 00 FA	255	LDA MNEMR,Y
F8F3:	B5 2D	256	STA RMNEM
F8F5:	A9 00	257	NXTCOL LDA #\$00
F8F7:	A0 05	258	LDY #\$05
F8F9:	06 2D	259	PRMN2 ASL RMNEM
F8FB:	26 2C	260	ROL LMNEM
F8FD:	2A	261	ROL A
F8FE:	BB	262	DEY
F8FF:	D0 FB	263	BNE PRMN2
F901:	69 BF	264	ADC #\$BF
F903:	20 ED FD	265	JSR COUT
F906:	CA	266	DEX
F907:	D0 EC	267	BNE NXTCOL
F909:	20 4B F9	268	JSR PRBLNK
F90C:	A4 2F	269	LDY LENGTH
F90E:	A2 06	270	LDX #\$06
F910:	E0 03	271	CPX #\$03
F912:	F0 1C	272	BEG PRADR5
F914:	06 2E	273	PRADR2 ASL FORMAT
F916:	90 0E	274	BCC PRADR3
F918:	BD B3 F9	275	LDA CHAR1-1,X
F91B:	20 ED FD	276	JSR COUT
F91E:	BD B9 F9	277	LDA CHAR2-1,X
F921:	F0 03	278	BEG PRADR3
F923:	20 ED FD	279	JSR COUT
F926:	CA	280	PRADR3 DEX
F927:	D0 E7	281	BNE PRADR1
F929:	60	282	RTS
F92A:	BB	283	PRADR4 DEY
F92B:	30 E7	284	BMI PRADR2
F92D:	20 DA FD	285	JSR PRBYTE
F930:	A5 2E	286	PRADR5 LDA FORMAT
F932:	C9 EB	287	CMP #\$EB

F934: B1 3A	288	LDA (PCL), Y
F934: 90 F2	289	BCC PRADR4
F938: 20 56 F9	290	PAGE
F938: 20 56 F9	291	RELAADR JSR PCADJ3
F938: AA	292	TAX
F93C: EB	293	INX
F93D: D0 01	294	DNE PRNTYX
F93F: CB	295	INY
F940: 98	296	PRNTYX TYA
F941: 20 DA FD	297	PRNTAX JSR PRBYTE
F944: 8A	298	PRNTX TXA
F945: 4C DA FD	299	JMP PRBYTE
F948: A2 03	300	PRBLNK LDX #\$03
F94A: A9 A0	301	PRBL2 LDA #\$A0
F94C: 20 ED FD	302	PRBL3 JSR COUT
F94F: CA	303	DEX
F950: D0 FB	304	BNE PRBL2
F952: 60	305	RTS
F953: 3B	306	PCADJ SEC
F954: A5 2F	307	PCADJ2 LDA LENGTH
F956: A4 3B	308	PCADJ3 LDY PCH
F958: AA	309	TAX
F959: 10 01	310	BPL PCADJ4
F95B: BB	311	DEY
F95C: 65 3A	312	PCADJ4 ADC PCL
F95E: 90 01	313	BCC RTS2
F960: CB	314	INY
F961: 60	315	RTS2 RTS
F962: 04	316	FMT1 DFB \$04
F963: 20	317	DFB \$20
F964: 54	318	DFB \$54
F965: 30	319	DFB \$30
F966: 0D	320	DFB \$0D
F967: 80	321	DFB \$80
F968: 04	322	DFB \$04
F969: 90	323	DFB \$90
F96A: 03	324	DFB \$03
F96B: 22	325	DFB \$22
F96C: 54	326	DFB \$54
F96D: 33	327	DFB \$33
F96E: 0D	328	DFB \$0D
F96F: 80	329	DFB \$80
F970: 04	330	DFB \$04
F971: 90	331	DFB \$90
F972: 04	332	DFB \$04
F973: 20	333	DFB \$20
F974: 54	334	DFB \$54
F975: 33	335	DFB \$33
F976: 0D	336	DFB \$0D
F977: 80	337	DFB \$80
F978: 04	338	DFB \$04
F979: 90	339	DFB \$90
F97A: 04	340	DFB \$04
F97B: 20	341	DFB \$20
F97C: 54	342	DFB \$54
F97D: 3B	343	DFB \$3B
F97E: 0D	344	DFB \$0D
F97F: 80	345	DFB \$80
F980: 04	346	DFB \$04
F981: 90	347	DFB \$90
F982: 00	348	DFB \$00
F983: 22	349	DFB \$22
F984: 44	350	DFB \$44
F985: 33	351	DFB \$33
F986: 0D	352	DFB \$0D
F987: CB	353	DFB \$CB
F988: 44	354	DFB \$44
F989: 00	355	DFB \$00
F98A: 11	356	DFB \$11
F98B: 22	357	DFB \$22
F98C: 44	358	DFB \$44
F98D: 33	359	DFB \$33
F98E: 0D	360	DFB \$0D

F9BF: CB	361	DFB \$CB
F990: 44	362	DFB \$44
F991: A9	363	DFB \$A9
F992: 01	364	DFB \$01
F993: 22	365	DFB \$22
F994: 44	366	DFB \$44
F995: 33	367	DFB \$33
F996: 0D	368	DFB \$0D
F997: 80	369	DFB \$80
F998: 04	370	DFB \$04
F999: 90	371	DFB \$90
F99A: 01	372	DFB \$01
F99B: 22	373	DFB \$22
F99C: 44	374	DFB \$44
F99D: 33	375	DFB \$33
F99E: 0D	376	DFB \$0D
F99F: 80	377	DFB \$80
F9A0: 04	378	DFB \$04
F9A1: 90	379	DFB \$90
F9A2: 26	380	DFB \$26
F9A3: 31	381	DFB \$31
F9A4: B7	382	DFB \$B7
F9A5: 9A	383	DFB \$9A
F9A6: 00	384 FMT2	DFB \$00
F9A7: 21	385	DFB \$21
F9AB: 81	386	DFB \$81
F9A9: 82	387	DFB \$82
F9AA: 00	388	DFB \$00
F9AB: 00	389	DFB \$00
F9AC: 59	390	DFB \$59
F9AD: 4D	391	DFB \$4D
F9AE: 91	392	DFB \$91
F9AF: 92	393	DFB \$92
F9B0: 86	394	DFB \$86
F9B1: 4A	395	DFB \$4A
F9B2: B5	396	DFB \$B5
F9B3: 9D	397	DFB \$9D
F9B4: AC	398 CHAR1	DFB \$AC
F9B5: A9	399	DFB \$A9
F9B6: AC	400	DFB \$AC
F9B7: A3	401	DFB \$A3
F9B8: AB	402	DFB \$AB
F9B9: A4	403	DFB \$A4
F9B8: D9	404 CHAR2	DFB \$D9
F9BB: 00	405	DFB \$00
F9BC: DB	406	DFB \$DB
F9BD: A4	407	DFB \$A4
F9BE: A4	408	DFB \$A4
F9BF: 00	409	DFB \$00
F9C0: 1C	410 MNML	DFB \$1C
F9C1: BA	411	DFB \$BA
F9C2: 1C	412	DFB \$1C
F9C3: 23	413	DFB \$23
F9C4: 5D	414	DFB \$5D
F9C5: BB	415	DFB \$BB
F9C6: 1B	416	DFB \$1B
F9C7: A1	417	DFB \$A1
F9CB: 9D	418	DFB \$9D
F9C9: BA	419	DFB \$BA
F9CA: 1D	420	DFB \$1D
F9CB: 23	421	DFB \$23
F9CC: 9D	422	DFB \$9D
F9CD: BB	423	DFB \$BB
F9CE: 1D	424	DFB \$1D
F9CF: A1	425	DFB \$A1
F9D0: 00	426	DFB \$00
F9D1: 29	427	DFB \$29
F9D2: 19	428	DFB \$19
F9D3: AE	429	DFB \$AE
F9D4: 69	430	DFB \$69
F9D5: AB	431	DFB \$AB
F9D6: 19	432	DFB \$19
F9D7: 23	433	DFB \$23

F9DB:	24	434	DFB \$24
F9D9:	53	435	DFB \$53
F9DA:	1B	436	DFB \$1B
F9DB:	23	437	DFB \$23
F9DC:	24	438	DFB \$24
F9DD:	53	439	DFB \$53
F9DE:	19	440	DFB \$19
F9DF:	A1	441	DFB \$A1
F9E0:	00	442	DFB \$00
F9E1:	1A	443	DFB \$1A
F9E2:	5B	444	DFB \$5B
F9E3:	5B	445	DFB \$5B
F9E4:	A5	446	DFB \$A5
F9E5:	69	447	DFB \$69
F9E6:	24	448	DFB \$24
F9E7:	24	449	DFB \$24
F9EB:	AE	450	DFB \$AE
F9E9:	AE	451	DFB \$AE
F9EA:	AB	452	DFB \$AB
F9EB:	AD	453	DFB \$AD
F9EC:	29	454	DFB \$29
F9ED:	00	455	DFB \$00
F9EE:	7C	456	DFB \$7C
F9EF:	00	457	DFB \$00
F9F0:	15	458	DFB \$15
F9F1:	9C	459	DFB \$9C
F9F2:	6D	460	DFB \$6D
F9F3:	9C	461	DFB \$9C
F9F4:	A5	462	DFB \$A5
F9F5:	69	463	DFB \$69
F9F6:	29	464	DFB \$29
F9F7:	53	465	DFB \$53
F9FB:	84	466	DFB \$84
F9F9:	13	467	DFB \$13
F9FA:	34	468	DFB \$34
F9FB:	11	469	DFB \$11
F9FC:	A5	470	DFB \$A5
F9FD:	69	471	DFB \$69
F9FE:	23	472	DFB \$23
F9FF:	A0	473	DFB \$A0
FA00:	DB	474 MNEMR	DFB \$DB
FA01:	62	475	DFB \$62
FA02:	5A	476	DFB \$5A
FA03:	4B	477	DFB \$4B
FA04:	26	478	DFB \$26
FA05:	62	479	DFB \$62
FA06:	94	480	DFB \$94
FA07:	BB	481	DFB \$BB
FA08:	54	482	DFB \$54
FA09:	44	483	DFB \$44
FA0A:	C8	484	DFB \$C8
FA0B:	54	485	DFB \$54
FA0C:	6B	486	DFB \$6B
FA0D:	44	487	DFB \$44
FA0E:	E8	488	DFB \$E8
FA0F:	94	489	DFB \$94
FA10:	00	490	DFB \$00
FA11:	B4	491	DFB \$B4
FA12:	08	492	DFB \$08
FA13:	B4	493	DFB \$B4
FA14:	74	494	DFB \$74
FA15:	B4	495	DFB \$B4
FA16:	2B	496	DFB \$2B
FA17:	6E	497	DFB \$6E
FA18:	74	498	DFB \$74
FA19:	F4	499	DFB \$F4
FA1A:	CC	500	DFB \$CC
FA1B:	4A	501	DFB \$4A
FA1C:	72	502	DFB \$72
FA1D:	F2	503	DFB \$F2
FA1E:	A4	504	DFB \$A4
FA1F:	8A	505	DFB \$8A
FA20:	00	506	DFB \$00

FA21: AA	507	DFB \$AA
FA22: A2	508	DFB \$A2
FA23: A2	509	DFB \$A2
FA24: 74	510	DFB \$74
FA25: 74	511	DFB \$74
FA26: 74	512	DFB \$74
FA27: 72	513	DFB \$72
FA28: 44	514	DFB \$44
FA29: 68	515	DFB \$68
FA2A: 82	516	DFB \$82
FA2B: 32	517	DFB \$32
FA2C: 82	518	DFB \$82
FA2D: 00	519	DFB \$00
FA2E: 22	520	DFB \$22
FA2F: 00	521	DFB \$00
FA30: 1A	522	DFB \$1A
FA31: 1A	523	DFB \$1A
FA32: 26	524	DFB \$26
FA33: 26	525	DFB \$26
FA34: 72	526	DFB \$72
FA35: 72	527	DFB \$72
FA36: 88	528	DFB \$88
FA37: C8	529	DFB \$C8
FA38: C4	530	DFB \$C4
FA39: CA	531	DFB \$CA
FA3A: 26	532	DFB \$26
FA3B: 48	533	DFB \$48
FA3C: 44	534	DFB \$44
FA3D: 44	535	DFB \$44
FA3E: A2	536	DFB \$A2
FA3F: CB	537	DFB \$CB
FA40:	538	PAGE
FA40: B5 45	539	IRG STA ACC
FA42: 68	540	PLA
FA43: 48	541	PHA
FA44: 0A	542	ASL A
FA45: 0A	543	ASL A
FA46: 0A	544	ASL A
FA47: 30 03	545	BMI BREAK
FA49: 6C FE 03	546	JMP (IRGLDC)
FA4C: 28	547	BREAK PLP
FA4D: 20 4C FF	548	JSR SAVI
FA50: 68	549	PLA
FA51: B5 3A	550	STA PCL
FA53: 68	551	PLA
FA54: B5 3B	552	STA PCH
FA56: 6C F0 03	553	JMP (BRKV) ; BRKV WRITTEN OVER BY DISK BOOT
FA59: 20 B2 FB	554	OLDBRK JSR INSDS1
FA5C: 20 DA FA	555	JSR RGDSP1
FA5F: 4C 65 FF	556	JMP MON
FA62: D8	557	RESET CLD ; DO THIS FIRST THIS TIME
FA63: 20 B4 FE	558	JSR SETNORM
FA66: 20 2F FE	559	JSR INIT
FA69: 20 93 FE	560	JSR SETVID
FA6C: 20 B9 FE	561	JSR SETKBD
FA6F: AD 58 CO	562	INITAN LDA SETANO ; AN0 = TTL HI
FA72: AD 5A CO	563	LDA SETAN1 ; AN1 = TTL HI
FA75: AD 5D CO	564	LDA CLRAN2 ; AN2 = TTL LO
FA78: AD 5C CO	565	LDA CLRAN3 ; AN3 = TTL LO
FA7B: AD FF CF	566	LDA CLRROM ; TURN OFF EXTNSN ROM
FA7E: 2C 10 CO	567	BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR KEYBOARD
FA81: D8	568	NEWMON CLD
FA82: 20 3A FF	569	JSR BELL ; CAUSES DELAY IF KEY BOUNCES
FA85: AD F3 03	570	LDA SOFTEV+1 ; IS RESET HI
FA88: 49 A5	571	EDR #6A5 ; A FUNNY COMPLEMENT OF THE
FABA: CD F4 03	572	CMP PWREDUP ; PWR UP BYTE ???
FABD: D0 17	573	BNE PWUP ; NO GO PWUP
FABF: AD F2 03	574	LDA SOFTEV ; YES SEE IF COLD START
FA92: D0 0F	575	BNE NOFIX ; HAS BEEN DONE YET?
FA94: A9 E0	576	LDA #EE0 ; ??
FA96: CD F3 03	577	CMP SOFTEV+1 ; ??
FA99: D0 0B	578	BNE NOFIX ; YES SO REENTER SYSTEM
FA9B: A0 03	579	FIXSEV LDY #3 ; NO GO POINT AT WARM START

FA9D: BC F2 03 580 STY SOFTEV ; FOR NEXT RESET
 FAA0: 4C 00 E0 581 JMP BASIC ; AND DO THE COLD START
 FAA3: 6C F2 03 582 NOFIX JMP (SOFTEV) ; SOFT ENTRY VECTOR
 FAA6: *****
 FAA6: 20 60 FB 584 PWRUP JSR APPLEII
 FAA9: 585 SETPG3 EQU * ; SET PAGE 3 VECTORS
 FAA9: A2 05 586 LDX #5
 FAAB: BD FC FA 587 SETPLP LDA PWRCON-1,X ; WITH CNTRL B ADDRS
 FAAE: 9D EF 03 588 STA BRKV-1,X ; OF CURRENT BASIC
 FAB1: CA 589 DEX
 FAB2: D0 F7 590 BNE SETPLP
 FAB4: A9 CB 591 LDA #8CB ; LOAD HI SLOT +1
 FAB6: B6 00 592 STX LOCO ; SETPG3 MUST RETURN X=0
 FABB: B5 01 593 STA LOCI ; SET PTR H
 FABA: A0 07 594 SLOOP LDY #7 ; Y IS BYTE PTR
 FABC: C6 01 595 DEC LOCI
 FABE: A5 01 596 LDA LOCI
 FAC0: C9 C0 597 CMP #8C0 ; AT LAST SLOT YET?
 FAC2: F0 D7 598 BEG FIXSEV ; YES AND IT CANT BE A DISK
 FAC4: BD FB 07 599 STA MSLOT
 FACT: B1 00 600 NXBTBYT LDA (LDCO),Y ; FETCH A SLOT BYTE
 FAC9: D9 01 FB 601 CMP DISKID=1,Y ; IS IT A DISK ??
 FACC: D0 EC 602 BNE SLOOP ; NO SO NEXT SLOT DOWN
 FACE: B8 603 DEY
 FACF: B8 604 DEY ; YES SO CHECK NEXT BYTE
 FAD0: 10 F5 605 BPL NXBTBYT ; UNTIL 4 CHECKED
 FAD2: 6C 00 00 606 JMP (LDCO)
 FAD5: EA 607 NOP
 FAD6: EA 608 NOP
 FAD7: 609 * REGDSP MUST ORG *FAD7
 FAD7: 20 BE FD 610 REGDSP JSR CRDT
 FADA: A9 45 611 RD_DSP1 LDA #845
 FADC: B5 40 612 STA A3L
 FADE: A9 00 613 LDA #800
 FAE0: B5 41 614 STA A3H
 FAE2: A2 FB 615 LDX #8FB
 FAE4: A9 A0 616 RD_DSP1 LDA #8A0
 FAE6: 20 ED FD 617 JSR COUT
 FAE9: BD 1E FA 618 LDA RTBL-251,X
 FAEC: 20 ED FD 619 JSR COUT
 FAEF: A9 BD 620 LDA #8BD
 FAF1: 20 ED FD 621 JSR COUT
 FAF4: 622 * LDA ACC+5,X
 FAF4: B5 4A 623 DFB \$85,\$4A
 FAF6: 20 DA FD 624 JSR PRBYTE
 FAF9: EB 625 INX
 FAFA: 30 EB 626 BMI RD_DSP1
 FAFC: 60 627 RTS
 FAFD: 59 FA 628 PWRCON DW OLDBRK
 FAFF: 00 EO 45 629 DFB \$00,\$EO,\$45
 FB02: 20 FF 00
 FB05: FF 630 DISKID DFB \$20,\$FF,\$00,\$FF
 FB06: 03 FF 3C 631 DFB \$03,\$FF,\$3C
 FB09: C1 D0 D0 632 TITLE DFB \$C1,\$D0,\$D0
 FB0C: CC C5 A0 633 DFB \$CC,\$C5,\$A0
 FB0F: DD DB 634 DFB \$DD,\$DB
 FB11: 635 XLTBL EQU *
 FB11: C4 C2 C1 636 DFB \$C4,\$C2,\$C1
 FB14: FF C3 637 DFB \$FF,\$C3
 FB16: FF FF FF 638 DFB \$FF,\$FF,\$FF
 FB19: 639 * MUST ORG #FB19
 FB19: C1 D8 D9 640 RTBL DFB \$C1,\$D8,\$D9
 FB1C: D0 D3 641 DFB \$D0,\$D3
 FB1E: AD 70 C0 642 PREAD LDA PTR10
 FB21: 643 LST ON
 FB21: A0 00 644 LDY #800
 FB23: EA 645 NOP
 FB24: EA 646 NOP
 FB25: BD 64 C0 647 PREAD2 LDA PADDLO,X
 FB26: 10 04 648 BPL RTS2D
 FB2A: C8 649 INY
 FB2B: D0 FB 650 BNE PREAD2
 FB2D: B8 651 DEY

F82E: 60	652	RTS2D	RTS
F82F: A9 00	2	INIT	LDA #\$00
F831: B5 4B	3		STA STATUS
F833: AD 56 C0	4		LDA LORES
F836: AD 54 C0	5		LDA LOWSCR
F839: AD 51 C0	6	SETXTXT	LDA TXTSET
F83C: A9 00	7		LDA #\$00
F83E: F0 00	8		BEG SETWND
F840: AD 50 C0	9	SETGR	LDA TXTCLR
F843: AD 53 C0	10		LDA MIXSET
F846: 20 36 FB	11		JSR CLRTOP
F849: A9 14	12		LDA #\$14
F84B: B5 22	13	SETWND	STA WNDTOP
F84D: A9 00	14		LDA #\$00
F84F: B5 20	15		STA WNDLFT
F851: A9 28	16		LDA #\$28
F853: B5 21	17		STA WNDWDTH
F855: A9 18	18		LDA #\$18
F857: B5 23	19		STA WNDBTM
F859: A9 17	20		LDA #\$17
F85B: B5 25	21	TABV	STA CV
F85D: 4C 22 FC	22		JMP VTAB
F860: 20 58 FC	23	APPLEIII	JSR HOME ; CLEAR THE SCRN
F863: A0 08	24		LDY #8
F865: B9 08 FB	25	STITLE	LDA TITLE-1,Y ; GET A CHAR
F866: 99 0E 04	26		STA LINE1+14,Y
F868: B6	27		DEY
F86C: D0 F7	28		BNE STITLE
F86E: 60	29		RTS
F86F: AD F3 03	30	SETPWRC	LDA SOFTEV+1
F872: 49 A5	31		EOR #\$A5
F874: BD F4 03	32		STA PWREDUP
F877: 60	33		RTS
F878:	34	VIDWAIT	EQU * ; CHECK FOR A PAUSE
F878: C9 BD	35		CMP #\$BD ; ONLY WHEN I HAVE A CR
F87A: D0 18	36		BNE NOWAIT ; NOT SO, DO REGULAR
F87C: AC 00 C0	37		LDY KBD ; IS KEY PRESSED?
F87F: 10 13	38		BPL NOWAIT ; NO
F881: C0 93	39		CPY #\$93 ; IS IT CTL S ?
F883: D0 0F	40		BNE NOWAIT ; NO SO IGNORE
F885: 2C 10 C0	41		BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR STROBE
F888: AC 00 C0	42	KBDWAIT	LDY KBD ; WAIT TILL NEXT KEY TO RESUME
F88B: 10 FB	43		BPL KBDWAIT ; WAIT FOR KEYPRESS
F88D: C0 B3	44		CPY #\$B3 ; IS IT CONTROL C ?
F88F: F0 03	45		BEG NOWAIT ; YES SO LEAVE IT
F891: 2C 10 C0	46		BIT KBDSTRB ; CLR STROBE
F894: 4C FD FB	47	NOWAIT	JMP VIDOUT ; DO AS BEFORE
F897:	48		PAGE
F897: 38	49	ESCOLD	SEC ; INSURE CARRY SET
F898: 4C 2C FC	50		JMP ESC1
F898: AB	51	ESCNOW	TAY ; USE CHAR AS INDEX
F89C: B9 4B FA	52		LDA XLTBL-\$C9,Y ; XLATE IJKM TO CBAD
F89F: 20 97 FB	53		JSR ESCOLD ; DO THIS CURSOR MOTION
F8A2: 20 0C FD	54		JSR RDKEY ; AND GET NEXT
F8A5: C9 CE	55	ESCNEW	CMP #\$CE ; IS THIS AN N ?
F8A7: B0 EE	56		BCS ESCOLD ; N OR GREATER DO IT
F8A9: C9 C9	57		CMP #\$C9 ; LESS THAN I ?
F8AB: 90 EA	58		BCC ESCOLD ; YES SO OLD WAY
F8AD: C9 CC	59		CMP #\$CC ; IS IT A L ?
F8AF: F0 E6	60		BEG ESCOLD ; DO NORMAL
F8B1: D0 EB	61		BNE ESCNOW ; GO DO IT
F8B3: EA	62		NOP
F8B4: EA	63		NOP
F8B5: EA	64		NOP
F8B6: EA	65		NOP
F8B7: EA	66		NOP
F8B8: EA	67		NOP
F8B9: EA	68		NOP
F8BA: EA	69		NOP

FBBB:	EA	70	NDP
FDBC:	EA	71	NDP
FBBB:	EA	72	NDP
FBBE:	EA	73	NDP
FBBF:	EA	74	NDP
FBC0:	EA	75	NDP
FBC1:		76 *	MUST ORG \$FBC1
FBC1:	4B	77	BASCALC PHA
FBC2:	4A	78	LSR A
FBC3:	29 03	79	AND #\$03
FBC5:	09 04	80	DRA #\$04
FBC7:	85 29	81	STA BASH
FBC9:	68	82	PLA
FBCA:	29 18	83	AND ##18
FBCC:	90 02	84	BCC BASCLC2
FBCE:	69 7F	85	ADC #7F
FBD0:	85 28	86	BASCLC2 STA BASL
FBD2:	0A	87	ASL A
FBD3:	0A	88	ASL A
FBD4:	05 28	89	DRA BASL
FBD6:	85 28	90	STA BASL
FBD8:	60	91	RTS
FBD9:	C9 87	92	BELL1 CMP ##87
FBDB:	D0 12	93	BNE RTS2B
FBDD:	A9 40	94	LDA ##40
FBDF:	20 AB FC	95	JSR WAIT
FBE2:	A0 C0	96	LDY ##C0
FBE4:	A9 0C	97	BELL2 LDA ##0C
FBE6:	20 AB FC	98	JSR WAIT
FBE9:	AD 30 C0	99	LDA SPKR
FBEA:	88	100	DEY
FBED:	D0 F5	101	BNE BELL2
FBEF:	60	102	RTS2B RTS
FBFO:		103	PAGE
FBF0:	A4 24	104	STORADV LDY CH
FBF2:	91 28	105	STA (BASL), Y
FBF4:	E6 24	106	ADVANCE INC CH
FBF6:	A5 24	107	LDA CH
FBFB:	C5 21	108	CMP WNDWDTN
FBFA:	B0 66	109	BCS CR
FBFC:	60	110	RTS3 RTS
FBFD:	C9 A0	111	VIDOUT CMP ##A0
FBFF:	B0 EF	112	BCS STORADV
FC01:	AB	113	TAY
FC02:	10 EC	114	BPL STORADV
FC04:	C9 BD	115	CMP ##BD
FC06:	F0 5A	116	BEG CR
FC08:	C9 BA	117	CMP ##BA
FC0A:	F0 5A	118	BEG LF
FC0C:	C9 BB	119	CMP ##BB
FC0E:	D0 C9	120	BNE BELL1
FC10:	C6 24	121	BS DEC CH
FC12:	10 EB	122	BPL RTS3
FC14:	A5 21	123	LDA WNDWDTN
FC16:	B5 24	124	STA CH
FC18:	C6 24	125	DEC CH
FC1A:	A5 22	126	UP LDA WNDTOP
FC1C:	C5 25	127	CMP CV
FC1E:	B0 0B	128	BCS RTS4
FC20:	C6 25	129	DEC CV
FC22:	A5 25	130	VTAB LDA CV
FC24:	20 C1 FB	131	VTABZ JSR BASCALC
FC27:	65 20	132	ADC WNDLFT
FC29:	B5 2B	133	STA BASL
FC2B:	60	134	RTS4 RTS
FC2C:	49 C0	135	ESC1 EDR ##C0 ; ESC e ?
FC2E:	F0 2B	136	BEG HOME ; IF SD DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30:	69 FD	137	ADC ##FD ; ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32:	90 C0	138	BCC ADVANCE ; A. ADVANCE
FC34:	F0 DA	139	BEG BS ; B. BACKSPACE
FC36:	69 FD	140	ADC ##FD ; ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38:	90 2C	141	BCC LF ; C. DOWN
FC3A:	F0 DE	142	BEG UP ; D. GO UP

FC3C: 69 FD	143	ADC #\$FD	; ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E: 90 5C	144	BCC CLREOL	; E. CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40: D0 E9	145	BNE RTS4	; ELSE NOT F. RETURN
FC42: A4 24	146	CLREOP	LDY CH ; ESC F IS CLR TO END OF PAGE
FC44: A5 25	147	LDA CV	
FC46: 48	148	CLEOP1	PHA
FC47: 20 24 FC	149	JSR VTABZ	
FC4A: 20 9E FC	150	JSR CLEOLZ	
FC4D: A0 00	151	LDY #\$00	
FC4F: 68	152	PLA	
FC50: 69 00	153	ADC #\$00	
FC52: C5 23	154	CMP WNDBTM	
FC54: 90 F0	155	BCC CLEOP1	
FC56: B0 CA	156	BCS VTAB	
FC58: A5 22	157	HOME	LDA WNDTOP
FC5A: B5 25	158	STA CV	
FC5C: A0 00	159	LDY #\$00	
FC5E: B4 24	160	STY CH	
FC60: F0 E4	161	BEG CLEOP1	
FC62:	162	PAGE	
FC62: A9 00	163	CR	LDA #\$00
FC64: B5 24	164	STA CH	
FC66: E6 25	165	LF	INC CV
FC68: A5 25	166	LDA CV	
FC6A: C5 23	167	CMP WNDBTM	
FC6C: 90 B6	168	BCC VTABZ	
FC6E: C6 25	169	DEC CV	
FC70: A5 22	170	SCROLL	LDA WNDTOP
FC72: 48	171	PHA	
FC73: 20 24 FC	172	JSR VTABZ	
FC76: A5 28	173	SCRL1	LDA BASL
FC78: B5 2A	174	STA BAS2L	
FC7A: A5 29	175	LDA BASH	
FC7C: B5 2B	176	STA BAS2H	
FC7E: A4 21	177	LDY WNDWDTH	
FC80: B8	178	DEY	
FC81: 68	179	PLA	
FC82: 69 01	180	ADC #\$01	
FC84: C5 23	181	CMP WNDBTM	
FC86: B0 00	182	BCS SCRL3	
FC88: 48	183	PHA	
FC89: 20 24 FC	184	JSR VTABZ	
FC8C: B1 2B	185	SCRL2	LDA (BASL), Y
FC8E: 91 2A	186	STA (BAS2L), Y	
FC90: B8	187	DEY	
FC91: 10 F9	188	BPL SCRL2	
FC93: 30 E1	189	BMI SCRL1	
FC95: A0 00	190	SCRL3	LDY #\$00
FC97: 20 9E FC	191	JSR CLEOLZ	
FC9A: B0 B6	192	BCS VTAB	
FC9C: A4 24	193	CLREOL	LDY CH
FC9E: A9 A0	194	CLEOLZ	LDA #\$A0
FCA0: 91 2B	195	CLEOL2	STA (BASL), Y
FCA2: CB	196	INY	
FCA3: C4 21	197	CPY WNDWDTH	
FCA5: 90 F9	198	BCC CLEOL2	
FCA7: 60	199	RTS	
F CAB: 3B	200	WAIT	SEC
FCA9: 48	201	WAIT2	PHA
FCAA: E9 01	202	WAIT3	SBC #\$01
FCAC: D0 FC	203	BNE WAIT3	
FCAE: 68	204	PLA	
FCAF: E9 01	205	SBC #\$01	
F C B1: D0 F6	206	BNE WAIT2	
F C B3: 60	207	RTS	
F C B4: E6 42	208	NXTA4	INC A4L
F C B6: D0 02	209	BNE NXTA1	
F C B8: E6 43	210	INC A4H	
F C BA: A5 3C	211	NXTA1	LDA A1L
F C BC: C5 3E	212	CMP A2L	
F C BE: A5 3D	213	LDA A1H	
F C C0: E5 3F	214	SBC A2H	
F C C2: E6 3C	215	INC A1L	

FCC4: D0 02	216	BNE RTS4B
FCC6: E6 3D	217	INC A1H
FCC8: 60	218	RTS4B
FCC9:	219	PAGE
FCC9: A0 4B	220	HEADR
FCCB: 20 DB FC	221	LDY #\$4B
FCCE: D0 F9	222	JSR ZERDLY
FCD0: 69 FE	223	BNE HEADR
FCD2: B0 F5	224	ADC #\$FE
FCD4: A0 21	225	BCS HEADR
FCD6: 20 DB FC	226	LDY #\$21
FCD9: C8	227	JSR ZERDLY
FCDA: C8	228	INY
FCDB: 68	229	INY
FCDC: ZERDLY	230	DEY
FCDE: 90 05	231	BNE ZERDLY
FCEO: A0 32	232	BCC WRTAPE
FCE2: B8	233	LDY #\$32
FCE3: D0 FD	234	ONEDLY
FCE5: AC 20 CO	235	BNE ONEDLY
FCEB: A0 2C	236	LDY TAPEOUT
FCEA: CA	237	LDY #\$2C
FCEB: 60	238	DEX
FCEC: A2 08	239	RTS
FCEF: 4B	240	RDBYTE
FCEF: 20 FA FC	241	LDX #\$08
FCF2: 6B	242	JSR RD2BIT
FCF3: 2A	243	PLA
FCF4: A0 3A	244	ROL A
FCF6: CA	245	LDY #\$3A
FCF7: D0 F5	246	DEX
FCF9: 60	247	BNE RDBYT2
FCFA: 20 FD FC	248	RTS
FCFD: 68	249	RDBIT
FCFE: AD 60 CO	250	JSR RDBIT
FD01: 45 2F	251	DEY
FD03: 10 F8	252	LDA TAPEIN
FD05: 45 2F	253	EDR LASTIN
FD07: B5 2F	254	BPL RD8BIT
FD09: CO 80	255	EDR LASTIN
FD0B: 60	256	STA LASTIN
FD0C: A4 24	257	CPY #\$B0
FD0E: B1 28	258	RTS
FD10: 4B	259	RDKEY
FD11: 29 3F	260	LDY CH
FD13: 09 40	261	LDA (BASL), Y
FD15: 91 28	262	ORA #\$40
FD17: 6B	263	STA (BASL), Y
FD18: 6C 38 00	264	PLA
FD1B: E6 4E	265	AND #\$3F
FD1D: D0 02	266	DRA #\$40
FD1F: E6 4F	267	STA (BASL), Y
FD21: 20 00 CO	268	BIT KBD : READ KEYBOARD
FD24: 10 F5	269	SPL KEYIN
FD26: 91 2B	270	INC RNDL
FD28: AD 00 CO	271	STA (BASL), Y
FD2B: 2C 10 CO	272	INC RNDH
FD2E: 60	273	LDA KBD
FD2F: 20 0C FD	274	BIT KBDSTRB
FD32: 20 A5 FB	275	RTS
FD35: 20 0C FD	276	JSR RDKEY
FD38: C9 98	277	JSR ESCNEW
FD3A: F0 F3	278	CMP #\$98
FD3C: 60	279	BEG ESC
FD3D: 60	280	RTS
FD3D: A5 32	281	PAGE
FD3F: 4B	282	NOTCR
FD40: A9 FF	283	LDA INVFLG
FD42: B5 32	284	PHA
FD44: BD 00 02	285	LDA #\$FF
FD47: 20 ED FD	286	STA INVFLG
FD4A: 6B	287	LDA IN. X
FD4B: B5 32	288	JSR COUT

FD4D	BD 00 02	289	LDA IN,X
FD50	C9 BB	290	CMP #\$BB
FD52	F0 1D	291	BEG BCKSPC
FD54	C9 9B	292	CMP #\$9B
FD56	F0 0A	293	BEG CANCEL
FD58	E0 FB	294	CPX #\$FB
FD5A	90 03	295	BCC NOTCR1
FD5C	20 3A FF	296	JSR BELL
FD5F	EB	297	NOTCR1 INX
FD60	D0 13	298	BNE NXTCHAR
FD62	A9 DC	299	CANCEL LDA #\$DC
FD64	20 ED FD	300	JSR COUT
FD67	20 BE FD	301	GETLNZ JSR CROUT
FD6A	A5 33	302	GETLN LDA PROMPT
FD6C	20 ED FD	303	JSR COUT
FD6F	A2 01	304	LDX #\$01
FD71	BA	305	BCKSPC TXA
FD72	F0 F3	306	BEG GETLNZ
FD74	CA	307	DEX
FD75	20 35 FD	308	NXTCHAR JSR RDCHAR
FD78	C9 95	309	CMP #\$95
FD7A	D0 02	310	BNE CAPTST
FD7C	B1 2B	311	LDA (BABL),Y
FD7E	C9 E0	312	CAPTST CMP #\$E0
FD80	90 02	313	BCC ADDINP
FD82	29 DF	314	AND #\$DF // SHIFT TO UPPER CASE
FD84	90 00 02	315	ADDINP STA IN,X
FD87	C9 BD	316	CMP #\$BD
FD89	D0 B2	317	BNE NOTCR
FD8B	20 9C FC	318	JSR CLREOL
FD8E	A9 BD	319	CROUT LDA #\$BD
FD90	D0 5B	320	BNE COUT
FD92	A4 3D	321	PRA1 LDY A1H
FD94	A6 3C	322	LDX A1L
FD96	20 BE FD	323	PRYX2 JSR CROUT
FD99	20 40 F9	324	JSR PRNTX
FD9C	A0 00	325	LDY #\$00
FD9E	A9 AD	326	LDA #\$AD
FDA0	4C ED FD	327	JMP COUT
FDA3		328	PAGE
FDA3	A5 3C	329	XAMB LDA A1L
FDA5	09 07	330	ORA #\$07
FDAT:	B5 3E	331	STA A2L
FD99	A5 3D	332	LDA A1H
FDAB	B5 3F	333	STA A2H
FDAD	A5 3C	334	MODBCHK LDA A1L
FDAF:	29 07	335	AND #\$07
FDB1	D0 03	336	BNE DATAOUT
FDB3	20 92 FD	337	XAM JSR PRA1
FDB6	A9 A0	338	DATAOUT LDA #\$AD
FDB8	20 ED FD	339	JSR COUT
FDBB	B1 3C	340	LDA (A1L),Y
FDBD	20 DA FD	341	JSR PRBYTE
FDC0	20 BA FC	342	JSR NXTA1
FDC3	90 EB	343	BCC MODBCHK
FDC5	60	344	RTS4C RTS
FDC6	4A	345	XAMPM LSR A
FDC7:	90 EA	346	BCC XAM
FDC9	4A	347	LSR A
FDC9	4A	348	LSR A
FDCB	A5 3E	349	LDA A2L
FDCD	90 02	350	BCC ADD
FDCF	49 FF	351	EOR #\$FF
FDD1	65 3C	352	ADD ADC A1L
FDD3	4B	353	PHA
FDD4	A9 BD	354	LDA #\$BD
FDD6	20 ED FD	355	JSR COUT
FDD9	6B	356	PLA
FDDA	4B	357	PRBYTE PHA
FDD8	4A	358	LSR A
FDDC	4A	359	LSR A
FDDD	4A	360	LSR A
FDEE	4A	361	LSR A

FDDF:	20 E5 FD	362	JSR PRHEXZ
FDE2:	68	363	PLA
FDE3:	29 0F	364	PRHEX AND #\$0F
FDE5:	09 B0	365	PRHEXZ ORA #\$B0
FDE7:	C9 BA	366	CMP #\$BA
FDE9:	90 02	367	BCC COUT
FDEB:	69 06	368	ADC #\$06
FDED:	6C 36 00	369	COUT JMP (CSHL)
FDF0:	C9 A0	370	COUT1 CMP #\$A0
FDF2:	90 02	371	BCC COUTZ
FDF4:	25 32	372	AND INVFLG
FDF6:	84 35	373	COUTZ STY YSAVI
FDFB:	48	374	PHA
FDF9:	20 78 FB	375	JSR VIDWAIT : GO CHECK FOR PAUSE
FDFC:	68	376	PLA
FDFD:	A4 35	377	LDY YSAVI
FDFF:	60	378	RTS
FE00:		379	PAGE
FE00:	C6 34	380	BL1 DEC YSAV
FE02:	F0 9F	381	BEG XAMB
FE04:	CA	382	BLANK DEX
FE05:	D0 16	383	BNE SETMDZ
FE07:	C9 BA	384	CMP #\$BA
FE09:	D0 88	385	BNE XAMPM
FE0B:	85 31	386	STOR STA MODE
FE0D:	A5 3E	387	LDA A2L
FE0F:	91 40	388	STA (A3L), Y
FE11:	E6 40	389	INC A3L
FE13:	D0 02	390	BNE RTSS
FE15:	E6 41	391	INC A3H
FE17:	60	392	RTSS RTS
FE18:	A4 34	393	SETMODE LDY YSAV
FE1A:	89 FF 01	394	LDA IN-L, Y
FE1D:	85 31	395	SETMDZ STA MODE
FE1F:	60	396	RTS
FE20:	A2 01	397	LT LDX #\$01
FE22:	B5 3E	398	LT2 LDA A2L, X
FE24:	95 42	399	STA A4L, X
FE26:	95 44	400	STA A5L, X
FE28:	CA	401	DEX
FE29:	10 F7	402	3PL LT2
FE2B:	60	403	RTS
FE2C:	B1 3C	404	MOVE LDA (A1L), Y
FE2E:	91 42	405	STA (A4L), Y
FE30:	20 B4 FC	406	JSR NXTA4
FE33:	90 F7	407	BCC MOVE
FE35:	60	408	RTS
FE36:	B1 3C	409	VFY LDA (A1L), Y
FE38:	D1 42	410	CMP (A4L), Y
FE3A:	F0 1C	411	BEG VFYOK
FE3C:	20 92 FD	412	JSR PRA1
FE3F:	B1 3C	413	LDA (A1L), Y
FE41:	20 DA FD	414	JSR PRBYTE
FE44:	A9 A0	415	LDA #\$A0
FE46:	20 ED FD	416	JSR COUT
FE49:	A9 AB	417	LDA #\$AB
FE4B:	20 ED FD	418	JSR COUT
FE4E:	B1 42	419	LDA (A4L), Y
FE50:	20 DA FD	420	JSR PRBYTE
FE53:	A9 A9	421	LDA #\$A9
FE55:	20 ED FD	422	JSR COUT
FE58:	20 B4 FC	423	VFYOK JSR NXTA4
FE5B:	90 D9	424	BCC VFY
FE5D:	60	425	RTS
FE5E:	20 75 FE	426	LIST JSR AIPC
FE61:	A9 14	427	LDA #\$14
FE63:	48	428	LIST2 PHA
FE64:	20 D0 FB	429	JSR INSTDSP
FE67:	20 53 F9	430	JSR PCADJ
FE6A:	85 3A	431	STA PCL
FE6C:	84 38	432	STY PCH
FE6E:	68	433	PLA
FE6F:	38	434	SEC

FE70	E9 01	435	SBC #\$01
FE72	00 EF	436	BNE LIST2
FE74	60	437	RTS
FE75		438	PAGE
FE75	BA	439	A1PC TXA
FE76	F0 07	440	BEG A1PCRTS
FE78	B5 3C	441	A1PCLP LDA A1L,X
FE7A	95 3A	442	STA PCL,X
FE7C	CA	443	DEX
FE7D	10 F9	444	SPL A1PCLP
FE7F	60	445	A1PCRTS RTS
FE80	A0 3F	446	SETINV LDY #\$3F
FE82	00 02	447	BNE SETIFLG
FE84	A0 FF	448	SETNORM LDY #\$FF
FE86	B4 32	449	SETIFLG STY INVFLG
FE88	60	450	RTS
FE89	A9 00	451	SETKBD LDA #\$00
FE8B	B5 3E	452	IMPORT STA A2L
FE8D	A2 3B	453	INPRT LDX #KSWL
FE8F	A0 1E	454	LDY #KEYIN
FE91	D0 0B	455	BNE IOPRT
FE93	A9 00	456	SETVID LDA #\$00
FE95	B5 3E	457	OUTPORT STA A2L
FE97	A2 36	458	OUTPRT LDX #CSWL
FE99	A0 F0	459	LDY #COUT1
FE9B	A5 3E	460	IOPRT LDA A2L
FE9D	29 0F	461	AND #\$0F
FE9F	F0 06	462	BEG IOPRT1
FEA1	09 C0	463	ORA #IOADR/256
FEA3	A0 00	464	LDY #\$00
FEA5	F0 02	465	BEG IOPRT2
FEA7	A9 FD	466	IOPRT1 LDA #COUT1/256
FEA9		467	IOPRT2 EQU *
FEA9	94 00	468	STY LOCO,X : \$94,\$00
FEAB	95 01	469	STA LOCI,X : \$95,\$01
FEAD	60	470	RTS
FEAE	EA	471	NOP
FEAF	EA	472	NOP
FE80	4C 00 E0	473	XBASIC JMP BASIC
FE83	4C 03 E0	474	BASCONT JMP BASIC2
FE86	20 75 FE	475	G0 JSR A1PC
FE89	20 3F FF	476	JSR RESTORE
FE8C	6C 3A 00	477	JMP (PCL)
FE8F	4C D7 FA	478	REGZ JMP REGDSP
FE92	60	479	TRACE RTS
FE93		480	* TRACE IS DONE
FE93	EA	481	NOP
FE94	60	482	STEPZ RTS
FE95	EA	483	NOP
FE96	EA	484	NOP
FE97	EA	485	NOP
FE9B	EA	486	NOP
FE99	EA	487	NOP
FECA	4C FB 03	488	USR JMP USRADR
FECD		489	PAGE
FECD	A9 40	490	WRITE LDA #\$40
FECF	20 C9 FC	491	JSR HEADR
FED2	A0 27	492	LDY #\$27
FED4	A2 00	493	WR1 LDX #\$00
FED6	41 3C	494	EOR (A1L,X)
FED8	4B	495	PHA
FED9	A1 3C	496	LDA (A1L,X)
FEDB	20 ED FE	497	JSR WRBYTE
FEDF	20 BA FC	498	JSR NXTA1
FEF1	A0 1D	499	LDY #\$1D
FEF3	6B	500	PLA
FEF4	90 EE	501	BCC WR1
FEF6	A0 22	502	LDY #\$22
FEFB	20 ED FE	503	JSR WRBYTE
FEFB	F0 4D	504	BEG BELL
FEFD	A2 10	505	WRBYTE LDX #\$10
FEFF	0A	506	WRBYT2 ASL A
FEFO	20 D6 FC	507	JSR WRBIT

FEF3: D0 FA	508	BNE WRBYT2
FEF5: 60	509	RTS
FEF6: 20 00 FE	510	CRMON JSR BLI
FEF9: 68	511	PLA
FEFA: 68	512	PLA
FEFB: D0 6C	513	BNE MONZ
FEFD: 20 FA FC	514	READ JSR RD2BIT
FF00: A9 16	515	LDA #16
FF02: 20 C9 FC	516	JSR HEADR
FF05: B5 2E	517	STA CHKSUM
FF07: 20 FA FC	518	JSR RD2BIT
FF0A: A0 24	519	RD2 LDY #24
FF0C: 20 FD FC	520	JSR RD2BIT
FF0F: B0 F9	521	BCS RD2
FF11: 20 FD FC	522	JSR RD2BIT
FF14: A0 3B	523	LDY #30
FF16: 20 EC FC	524	RD3 JSR RDBYTE
FF19: B1 3C	525	STA (A1L,X)
FF1B: 45 2E	526	EOR CHKSUM
FF1D: B5 2E	527	STA CHKSUM
FF1F: 20 BA FC	528	JSR NXTA1
FF22: A0 35	529	LDY #35
FF24: 90 F0	530	BCC RD3
FF26: 20 EC FC	531	JSR RDBYTE
FF29: C5 2E	532	CMP CHKSUM
FF2B: F0 0D	533	BEG BELL
FF2D: A9 C5	534	PRERR LDA #C5
FF2F: 20 ED FD	535	JSR COUT
FF32: A9 D2	536	LDA #D2
FF34: 20 ED FD	537	JSR COUT
FF37: 20 ED FD	538	JSR COUT
FF3A: A9 B7	539	BELL LDA #B7
FF3C: 4C ED FD	540	JMP COUT
FF3F:	541	PAGE
FF3F: A5 48	542	RESTORE LDA STATUS
FF41: 48	543	PHA
FF42: A5 45	544	LDA A5H
FF44: A6 46	545	RESTR1 LDX XREG
FF46: A4 47	546	LDY YREG
FF48: 28	547	PLP
FF49: 60	548	RTS
FF4A: B5 45	549	SAVE STA A5H
FF4C: B6 46	550	SAV1 STX XREG
FF4E: B4 47	551	STY YREG
FF50: 08	552	PHP
FF51: 68	553	PLA
FF52: B5 48	554	STA STATUS
FF54: BA	555	TSX
FF55: B6 49	556	STX SPNT
FF57: 08	557	CLD
FF58: 60	558	RTS
FF59: 20 84 FE	559	OLDIRST JSR SETNDRM
FF5C: 20 2F FB	560	JSR INIT
FF5F: 20 93 FE	561	JSR SETVID
FF62: 20 B9 FE	562	JSR SETKBD
FF65:	563	PAGE
FF65: DB	564	MON CLD
FF66: 20 3A FF	565	JSR BELL
FF69: A9 AA	566	MONZ LDA #AA
FF6B: B5 33	567	STA PROMPT
FF6D: 20 67 FD	568	JSR GETLNZ
FF70: 20 C7 FF	569	JSR ZMODE
FF73: 20 A7 FF	570	NXTITM JSR GETNUM
FF76: B4 34	571	STY YSAV
FF78: A0 17	572	LDY #17
FF7A: B8	573	CHRSRCH DEY
FF7B: 30 EB	574	BMI MON
FF7D: D9 CC FF	575	CMP CHRTBL,Y
FF80: D0 FB	576	BNE CHRSRCH
FF82: 20 BE FF	577	JSR TOSUB
FF85: A4 34	578	LDY YSAV
FF87: 4C 73 FF	579	JMP NXTITM
FF8A: A2 03	580	DIG LDX #03

FF8C	0A	581	ASL A
FF8D	0A	582	ASL A
FF8E	0A	583	ASL A
FF8F	0A	584	ASL A
FF90	0A	585	NXTBIT ASL A
FF91	26 3E	586	ROL A2L
FF93	26 3F	587	ROL A2H
FF95	CA	588	DEX
FF96	10 F8	589	BPL NXTBIT
FF98	A5 31	590	NXTBAS LDA MODE
FF9A	D0 06	591	BNE NXTBS2
FF9C		592 *	
FF9C	B5 3F	593	LDA A2H, X
FF9E	95 3D	594 *	
FFA0		595	STA A1H, X
FFA0	95 41	597	STA A3H, X
FFA2	E8	598	NXTBS2 INX
FFA3	F0 F3	599	BEG NXTBAS
FFA5	D0 06	600	BNE NXTCHR
FFA7	A2 00	601	GETNUM LDX #\$00
FFA9	96 3E	602	STX A2L
FFAB	B6 3F	603	STX A2H
FFAD	B9 00 C2	604	NXTCHR LDA IN, Y
FFB0	C8	605	INY
FFB1	49 B0	606	EDR #\$B0
FFB3	C9 0A	607	CMP #\$0A
FFB5	90 D3	608	BCC DIG
FFB7	69 BB	609	ADC #\$BB
FFB9	C9 FA	610	CMP #\$FA
FFB0	B0 CD	611	BCS DIG
FFBD	60	612	RTS
FFBE	A9 FE	613	TOSUP LDA #\$D/256
FFC0	48	614	PHA
FFC1	B9 E3 FF	615	LDA SUBTBL, Y
FFC4	48	616	PHA
FFC5	A5 31	617	LDA MODE
FFC7	A0 00	618	ZMODE LDY #\$00
FFC9	B4 31	619	STY MODE
FFCB	60	620	RTS
FFCC		621	PAGE
FFCC	BC	622	CHRtbl DFB \$BC
FFCD	B2	623	DFB \$B2
FFCE	BE	624	DFB \$BE
FFCF	B2	625	DFB \$B2 ; T CMD NOW LIKE USR
FFD0	EF	626	DFB \$EF
FFD1	C4	627	DFB \$C4
FFD2	B2	628	DFB \$B2 ; S CMD NOW LIKE USR
FFD3	A9	629	DFB \$A9
FFD4	BB	630	DFB \$BB
FFD5	A6	631	DFB \$A6
FFD6	A4	632	DFB \$A4
FFD7	06	633	DFB \$06
FFDB	95	634	DFB \$95
FFD9	07	635	DFB \$07
FFDA	02	636	DFB \$02
FFDD	05	637	DFB \$05
FFDC	F0	638	DFB \$F0
FFDD	00	639	DFB \$00
FFDE	E8	640	DFB \$EB
FFDF	93	641	DFB \$93
FFE0	A7	642	DFB \$A7
FFE1	C6	643	DFB \$C6
FFE2	99	644	DFB \$99
FFE3	B2	645	SUBTBL DFB \$B2
FFE4	C9	646	DFB \$C9
FFE5	BE	647	DFB \$BE
FFE6	C1	648	DFB \$C1
FFE7	35	649	DFB \$35
FFEB	BC	650	DFB \$BC
FFEB	C4	651	DFB \$C4
FFEA	96	652	DFB \$96
FFEB	AF	653	DFB \$AF

FFEC	17	654	DFB \$17
FFED	17	655	DFB \$17
FFEE	28	656	DFB \$28
FFEF	1F	657	DFB \$1F
FFF0	B3	658	DFB \$B3
FFF1	7F	659	DFB \$7F
FFF2	5D	660	DFB \$5D
FFF3	CC	661	DFB \$CC
FFF4	B5	662	DFB \$B5
FFF5	FC	663	DFB \$FC
FFF6	17	664	DFB \$17
FFF7	17	665	DFB \$17
FFF8	F5	666	DFB \$F5
FFF9	03	667	DFB \$03
FFFA	FB 03	668	DW NMI
FFFC	62 FA	669	DW RESET
FFFE	40 FA	670	DW IRG

ENDASH

MONITOR ROM LISTING

```
1 *****  
2 *  
3 *      APPLE II  
4 *      SYSTEM MONITOR  
5 *  
6 *      COPYRIGHT 1977 BY  
7 *      APPLE COMPUTER, INC.  
8 *  
9 *      ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  
10 *  
11 *      S. WOZNIAK  
12 *      A. BAUM  
13 *  
14 *****  
15          TITLE      "APPLE II SYSTEM MONITOR"  
16 LOC0      EPZ  $00  
17 LOCL      EPZ  $01  
18 WNDLFT    EPZ  $20  
19 WNDWDTH   EPZ  $21  
20 WNDTOP    EPZ  $22  
21 WNDBTM    EPZ  $23  
22 CH       EPZ  $24  
23 CV       EPZ  $25  
24 GBASL    EPZ  $26  
25 GBASH    EPZ  $27  
26 BASL     EPZ  $28  
27 BASH     EPZ  $29  
28 BAS2L    EPZ  $2A  
29 BAS2H    EPZ  $2B  
30 H2       EPZ  $2C  
31 LMNEM    EPZ  $2C  
32 RTNL     EPZ  $2C  
33 V2       EPZ  $2D  
34 RMNEM    EPZ  $2D  
35 RTNH     EPZ  $2D  
36 MASK     EPZ  $2E  
37 CKSUM    EPZ  $2E  
38 FORMAT   EPZ  $2E  
39 LASTIN   EPZ  $2F  
40 LENGTH   EPZ  $2F  
41 SIGN     EPZ  $2F  
42 COLOR    EPZ  $30  
43 MODE     EPZ  $31  
44 INVFLG   EPZ  $32  
45 PROMPT   EPZ  $33  
46 YSAV     EPZ  $34  
47 YSAV1    EPZ  $35  
48 CSW1    EPZ  $36  
49 CSW2    EPZ  $37  
50 KSW1    EPZ  $38  
51 KSWH    EPZ  $39  
52 PCL     EPZ  $3A  
53 PCH     EPZ  $3B  
54 XOT     EPZ  $3C  
55 RIL     EPZ  $3C  
56 AIR     EPZ  $3D  
57 A2L     EPZ  $3E  
58 A2H     EPZ  $3F  
59 A3L     EPZ  $40  
60 A3H     EPZ  $41  
61 A4L     EPZ  $42  
62 A4H     EPZ  $43  
63 A5L     EPZ  $44  
64 A5H     EPZ  $45  
65 ACC     EPZ  $45  
66 XREG    EPZ  $46  
67 YREG    EPZ  $47  
68 STATUS   EPZ  $48
```

	69	SPNT	EPZ	\$49	
	70	RNDL	EPZ	\$4E	
	71	RNDH	EPZ	\$4F	
	72	ACL	EPZ	\$50	
	73	ACH	EPZ	\$51	
	74	XTNCL	EPZ	\$52	
	75	XTNCH	EPZ	\$53	
	76	AUXL	EPZ	\$54	
	77	AUXH	EPZ	\$55	
	78	PICK	EPZ	\$56	
	79	IN	EQU	\$0200	
	80	USRADR	EQU	\$03FB	
	81	NMI	EQU	\$03FB	
	82	IRQLOC	EQU	\$03FE	
	83	IOADR	EQU	\$C000	
	84	KBD	EQU	\$C000	
	85	KBDGTRB	EQU	\$C010	
	86	TAPEOUT	EQU	\$C020	
	87	SPKR	EQU	\$C030	
	88	TXTCLR	EQU	\$C050	
	89	TXTSET	EQU	\$C051	
	90	MIXCLR	EQU	\$C052	
	91	MIXSET	EQU	\$C053	
	92	LOWSCR	EQU	\$C054	
	93	HISCR	EQU	\$C055	
	94	LORES	EQU	\$C056	
	95	Hires	EQU	\$C057	
	96	TAPEIN	EQU	\$C060	
	97	FADDL0	EQU	\$C064	
	98	PTRIG	EQU	\$C070	
	99	BASIC	EQU	\$E000	
	100	BASIC2	EQU	\$E003	
	101		ORG	\$F000	ROM START ADDRESS
F800:	4A	102	PLOT	LSR A	Y-COORD/2
F801:	0A	103		PHP	SAVE LSB IN CARRY
F802:	20 49 F8	104		JSR GBASCALC	CALC BASE ADR IN COALS,B
F803:	26	105		PLP	RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F804:	A9 0F	106		LDA #\$0F	MASK \$0F IF EVEN
F805:	90 02	107		BCC RTMASK	
F806:	69 E0	108		ADC #\$00	MASK \$FO IF ODD
F80C:	85 2E	109	RTMASK	STA MASK	
F80E:	81 26	110	PLOT1	LDA (GBASL),Y	DATA
F810:	45 30	111		EOR COLOR	XOR COLOR
F812:	25 2E	112		AND MASK	AND MASK
F814:	51 26	113		EOR (GBASL),Y	XOR DATA
F816:	91 26	114		STA (GBASL),Y	TO DATA
F818:	60	115		RTS	
F819:	20 00 F8	116	HLINE	JSR PLOT	PLOT SQUARE
F81C:	C4 2C	117	HLINEL	CPY H2	DONE?
F81E:	80 11	118		BCS RTS1	YES, RETURN
F820:	C8	119		INY	NO, INCX INDEX (X-COORD)
F821:	20 0E F8	120		JSR PLOT1	PLOT NEXT SQUARE
F824:	90 F6	121		BCC HLINE1	ALWAYS TAKEN
F826:	69 01	122	VLINEZ	ADC #\$01	NEXT Y-COORD
F828:	48	123	VLINE	PHA	SAVE ON STACK
F829:	20 00 F8	124		JSR PLOT	PLOT SQUARE
F82C:	68	125		PLA	
F82D:	C5 2D	126		CMP V2	DONE?
F82F:	90 F5	127		BCC VLINEZ	NO, LOOP.
F831:	60	128	RTS1	RTS	
F832:	A0 2P	129	CLRSCR	LDY #\$2P	MAX Y, FULL SCR CLR
F834:	00 02	130		SNE CLRSC2	ALWAYS TAKEN
F835:	A0 27	131	CLRTOP	LDY #527	MAX Y, TOP SCR CLR
F838:	84 2D	132	CLRSC2	STY V2	STORE AS BOTTOM COORD
		133 *			FOR VLINE CALLS
F83A:	A0 27	134		LDY #527	RIGHTMOST X-COORD (COLUMN)
F83C:	A9 00	135	CLRSC3	LDA #\$0	TOP COORD FOR VLINE CALLS
F83E:	65 30	136		STA COLOR	CLEAR COLOR (BLACK)
F840:	20 28 F8	137		JSR VLINE	DRAW VLINE
F841:	68	138		DEY	NEXT LEFTEST X-COORD
F844:	10 F6	139		BPL CLRSC3	LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F846:	60	140		RTS	
F847:	48	141	GBASCALC	PHA	FOR INPUT 0000DEFGH
F848:	4A	142		LSR A	

F849:	29 03	143	AND #\$03	GENERATE GBASH=000001FG
F84B:	09 04	144	ORA #\$04	
F84D:	65 27	145	STA GBASH	AND GBASL=HDEDE000
F84F:	66	146	PLA	
F850:	29 1d	147	AND #\$18	
F852:	90 02	148	BCC GBCALC	
F854:	69 7F	149	ADC #\$7F	
F856:	65 26	150	GBCALC STA GBASL	
F858:	0A	151	ASL A	
F859:	0A	152	ASL A	
F85A:	05 26	153	ORA GBASL	
F85C:	65 26	154	STA GBASL	
F85E:	60	155	RTS	
F85F:	A5 30	156	NXTCOL LDA COLOR	INCREMENT COLOR BY 3
F861:	10	157	CCL	
F862:	69 03	158	ADC #\$03	
F864:	29 0F	159	SETCOL AND #\$0F	SETS COLOR=17*A MOD 16
F866:	65 30	160	STA COLOR	
F868:	0A	161	ASL A	BOTH HALF BYTES OF COLOR EQUAL
F869:	0A	162	ASL A	
F86A:	0A	163	ASL A	
F86B:	0A	164	ASL A	
F86C:	05 30	165	ORA COLOR	
F86E:	65 30	166	STA COLOR	
F870:	60	167	RTS	
F871:	4A	168	SCRN LSR A	READ SCREEN Y-COORD/2
F872:	08	169	PHP	SAVE LSB (CARRY)
F873:	20 47 F8	170	JSR GBASCALC	CALC BASE ADDRESS
F876:	B1 26	171	LDA (GBASL),Y	GET BYTE
F878:	26	172	PLP	RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F879:	90 04	173	SCRN2 BCC RTMSKZ	IF EVEN, USE LO H
F87B:	4A	174	LSR A	
F87C:	4A	175	LSR A	
F87D:	4A	176	LSR A	SHIFT HIGH HALF BYTE DOWN
F87E:	4A	177	LSR A	
F87F:	29 0F	178	RTHSKZ AND #\$0F	MASK 4-BITS
F881:	60	179	RTS	
F882:	A6 3A	180	INSDS1 LDX PCL	PRINT PCL,H
F884:	A4 38	181	LDY PCH	
F886:	20 96 FD	182	JSR PRYX2	
F889:	20 48 F9	183	JSR PRBLNK	FOLLOWED BY A BLANK
F88C:	A1 3A	184	LDA (PCL,X)	GET OP CGDE
F88E:	Ab	185	INSDS2 TAY	
F88F:	4A	186	LSR A	EVEN/ODD TEST
F890:	90 09	187	BCC IEVEN	
F892:	6A	188	RDR A	SIT I TEST
F893:	B0 10	189	BCS DRR	XXXXXXXX INVALID OP
F895:	C9 A2	190	CMP #\$A2	
F897:	F0 0C	191	BEQ ERR	OPCODE \$89 INVALID
F899:	29 d7	192	AND #\$87	MASK BITS
F89B:	4A	193	IEVEN LSR A	LSB INTO CARRY FOR L/R TEST
F89C:	AA	194	TAX	
F89D:	BD 62 F9	195	LDA FMT1,X	GET FORMAT INDEX BYTE
F8A0:	20 79 F8	196	JSR SCAN2	R/L H-BYTE ON CARRY
F8A1:	DU 04	197	BNE GETFMT	
F8A5:	A0 80	198	ERR LDY #\$80	SUBSTITUTE \$80 FOR INVALID OPS
F8A7:	A9 00	199	LDA #\$0	SET PRINT FORMAT INDEX TO 0
F8A9:	AA	200	GETFMT TAX	
F8AA:	BD A6 F9	201	LDA FMT2,X	INDEX INTO PRINT FORMAT TABLE
F8AD:	B5 2E	202	STA FORMAT	SAVE FOR ADR FIELD FORMATTING
F8AF:	29 03	203	AND #\$03	MASK FOR 2-BIT LENGTH
	204	*	(P=1 BYTE, 1=2 BYTE, Z=3 BYTE)	
F8B1:	65 2F	205	STA LENGTH	
F8B3:	98	206	TYA	OPCODE
F8B4:	29 8F	207	AND #\$8F	MASK FOR XXXX1010 TEST
F8B6:	AA	208	TAX	SAVE IT
F8B7:	98	209	TYA	OPCODE TO A AGAIN
F8B8:	A0 u3	210	LDY #\$03	
F8B9:	E0 8A	211	Cpx #\$8A	
F8BC:	F0 0B	212	BEQ MNNDX3	
F8BE:	4A	213	MNNDX1 LSR A	
F8BF:	90 d8	214	BCC MNNDX3	FORM INDEX INTO MNEMONIC TABLE
F8C1:	4A	215	LSR A	

F8C2:	4A	216	MNNDX2	LSR	A	1) XXXX1G10=>0010XXXX
F8C3:	09 20	217		ORA	#\$20	2) XXXXYTY01=>0011XXXX
F8C5:	88	218		DEY		3) XXXYYY10=>0011XXXX
F8C6:	00 FA	219		BNE	MNNDX2	4) XXXYYL00=>0011XXXX
F8C8:	Cd	220		INY		5) XXXXX000=>0000XXXX
F8C9:	88	221	MNNDX3	DEY		
F8CA:	00 F2	222		BNE	MNNDX1	
F8CC:	60	223		RTS		
F8CD:	FF FF FF	224		DFB	\$FF,\$FF,\$FF	
F8D0:	20 82 F8	225	INSTDSP	JSR	INSDSI	GEN FMT, LEN BYTES
F8D1:	48	226		PHA		SAVE MNEMONIC TABLE INDEX
F8D4:	B1 JA	227	PRNTOP	LDA	(PCL),Y	
F8D6:	20 DA FD	228		JSR	PRBYTE	
F8D9:	A2 01	229		LDX	#\$01	PRINT 2 BLANKS
F8D8:	20 4A F9	230	PRNTBL	JSR	PRBL2	
F8D2:	C4 2F	231		CPY	LENGTH	PRINT INST (1-3 BYTES)
F8E0:	C8	232		INY		IN A 12 CHR FIELD
F8E1:	90 F1	233		BCC	PRNTOP	
F8E3:	A2 03	234		LDX	#\$03	CHAR COUNT FOR MNEMONIC PRINT
F8E5:	CD 04	235		CFY	#\$04	
F8E7:	90 F2	236		BCC	PRNTBL	
F8E9:	68	237		PLA		RECOVER MNEMONIC INDEX
F8EA:	A8	238		TAY		
F8EB:	B9 C0 F9	239		LDA	MNEML,Y	
F8EE:	05 2C	240		STA	LMNEM	FETCH 3-CHAR MNEMONIC
F8F0:	B9 00 FA	241		LDA	MNEMR,Y	(PACKED IN 2-BYTES)
F8F3:	85 20	242		STA	RMNEM	
F8F5:	A9 00	243	PRMN1	LDA	#\$00	
F8F7:	AU 05	244		LDY	#\$05	
F8F9:	06 20	245	PRMN2	ASL	RMNEM	SHIFT 5 BITS OF
F8FB:	26 2C	246		ROL	LMNEM	CHARACTER INTO A
F8FD:	2A	247		ROL	A	(CLEAR CARRY)
F8FE:	88	248		DEY		
F8FF:	00 F8	249		BNE	PRMN2	
F901:	69 BF	250		ADC	#\$BF	ADD "??" OFFSET
F903:	20 ED FD	251		JSR	COUT	OUTPUT A CHAR OF MNEM
F906:	CA	252		DEX		
F907:	D0 EC	253		BNE	PRMN1	
F909:	20 46 F9	254		JSR	PRBLNK	OUTPUT 3 BLANKS
F90C:	A4 2F	255		LDY	LENGTH	
F90E:	A2 06	256		LDX	#\$06	CNT FOR 6 FORMAT BITS
F910:	E0 03	257	PRADRI	CPX	#\$03	
F912:	FD 1C	258		BEQ	PRADRS	IF X=3 THEN ADDR.
F914:	0E 2E	259	PRADR2	ASL	FORMAT	
F916:	90 JE	260		BCC	PRADR1	
F918:	BD B3 F5	261		LDA	CHAR1-1,X	
F919:	20 ED FD	262		JSR	COUT	
F91B:	BD B9 F9	263		LDA	CHAR2-1,X	
F921:	FD 03	264		BEQ	PRADR3	
F923:	20 ED FD	265		JSR	COUT	
F926:	CA	266	PRADR3	DEX		
F927:	D0 E7	267		BNE	PRADR1	
F929:	60	268		RTS		
F92A:	88	269	PRADR4	DEY		
F92B:	30 C7	270		SMI	PRADR2	
F92D:	20 DA FD	271		JSR	PRBYTE	
F930:	A5 2E	272	PRADR5	LDA	FORMAT	
F932:	C9 E8	273		CRP	#\$E8	HANDLE REL ADD MODE
F934:	B1 JA	274		LDA	(PCL),Y	SPECIAL (PRINT TARGET,
F936:	90 F2	275		BCC	PRADR4	NOT OFFSET)
F938:	20 56 F9	276	RELADR	JSR	PCADJ3	PCL,PCH+OFFSET+1 TO A,Y
F93B:	AA	277		TAX		
F93C:	E8	278		INX		
F93D:	D0 01	279		BNE	PRNTYX	+I TO Y,X
F93F:	C6	280		INY		
F940:	98	281	PRNTYX	TYA		
F941:	20 DA FD	282	PRNTAX	JSR	PRBYTE	OUTPUT TARGET ADM
F944:	8A	283	PRNTX	TXA		OF BRANCH AND RETURN
F945:	4C DA FD	284		JMP	PRBYTE	
F946:	A2 03	285	PRBLNK	LDX	#\$03	BLANK COUNT
F94A:	A9 A0	286	PRBL2	LDA	#\$A0	LOAD A SPACE
F94C:	20 ED FD	287	PRBL3	JSR	COUT	OUTPUT A BLANK
F94F:	CA	288		DEX		

F950:	00	FB	289		BNE	PRBL2	LOOP UNTIL COUNT=0
F952:	60		290		RTS		
F953:	3d		291	PCADJ	SEC	0=1-BYTE, 1=2-BYTE,	
F954:	A5	2F	292	PCADJ2	LDA	2=3-BYTE	
F955:	A4	3B	293	PCADJ3	LDY	PCH	
F956:	AA		294		TAX	TEST DISPLACEMENT SIGN	
F957:	10	01	295		BPL	(FOR REL BRANCH)	
F958:	dd		296		DEY	EXTEND NEG BY DECR PCH	
F95C:	65	3A	297	PCADJ4	ADC	PCL	
F95E:	90	01	298		BCC	RTS2	
F960:	C6		299		INY	PCL+LENGTH(OR DISPL)+1 TO A	
F961:	60		300	RTS2	RTS	CARRY INTO Y (PCH)	
	301	*			FMT1	BYTES: XXXXXXX0 INSTRS	
	302	*				IF Y=0 THEN LEFT HALF BYTE	
	303	*				IF Y=1 THEN RIGHT HALF BYTE	
	304	*				(X=INDEX)	
F962:	04	20	54				
F965:	30	0D	305	FMT1	DFB	\$04,\$20,\$54,\$	
F967:	60	04	90				
F96A:	03	22	306		DFB	\$80,\$04,\$90,\$	
F96C:	54	33	0D				
F96F:	80	04	307		DFB	\$54,\$33,\$0D,\$	
F971:	90	04	20				
F974:	54	33	308		DFB	\$90,\$04,\$20,\$	
F976:	0D	80	04				
F979:	90	04	309		DFB	\$90,\$80,\$04,\$	
F97B:	20	54	3B				
F97C:	60	80	310		DFB	\$20,\$54,\$3B,\$	
F980:	04	90	90				
F983:	22	44	311		DFB	\$04,\$90,\$00,\$	
F985:	33	0D	C8				
F988:	44	36	312		DFB	\$33,\$0D,\$C8,\$	
F98A:	11	22	44				
F98D:	33	0D	313		DFB	\$11,\$22,\$44,\$	
F98F:	C8	44	59				
F992:	01	22	314		DFB	\$C8,\$44,\$A9,\$	
F994:	44	33	0D				
F997:	80	04	315		DFB	\$44,\$33,\$0D,\$	
F999:	90	01	22				
F99C:	44	33	316		DFB	\$90,\$01,\$22,\$	
F99E:	0D	80	04				
F9A1:	90		317		DFB	\$0D,\$80,\$04,\$	
F9A2:	26	31	87				
F9A5:	9A		318		DFB	\$26,\$31,\$87,\$ZXXXXY1 INSTR'S	
F9A6:	00		319	FMT2	DFB	\$00	
F9A7:	21		320		DFB	ERR	
F9A8:	81		321		DFB	21	
F9A9:	82		322		DFB	Z-PAGE	
F9AA:	00		123		DFB	800	
F9AB:	00		324		DFB	IMPLIED	
F9AC:	59		325		DFB	ACCUMULATOR	
F9AD:	40		326		DFB	(ZPAG,X)	
F9AE:	91		327		DFB	(ZPAG,Y)	
F9AF:	92		328		DFB	ABS,X	
F9B0:	86		329		DFB	ABS,Y	
F9B1:	4A		330		DFB	(ADS)	
F9B2:	85		331		DFB	(ADS)	
F9B3:	90		332		DFB	RELATIVE	
F9B4:	AC	A9	AC				
F9B7:	A3	Ab	A4	333	CHAR1	ASC ",),*(S"	
F9BA:	D9	00	D8				
F9BD:	A4	A4	8U	334	CHAR2	DFB \$D9,\$00,\$08,\$	
	335	*	CHAR2:			"Y",0,"XSS",0	
	336	*			MNEML	IS OF FORM:	
	337	*				(A) XXXXX000	
	338	*				(B) XXXYY100	
	339	*				(C) IXXXX1010	
	340	*				(D) XXXYYYY10	
	341	*				(E) XXXYYYY01	
	342	*				(X=INDEX)	
F9C0:	1C	8A	1C				
F9C3:	23	5D	8B	343	MNEML	DFB \$1C,\$8A,\$1C,\$	
F9C6:	1B	A1	9D				

F9C9:	6A 1D 23 344	DFB S1B,S41,\$9D,\$
F9CC:	9D 32 1D	DFB \$9D,\$6B,\$1D,\$
F9CF:	A1 00 29 345	DFB \$19,\$AE,\$69,\$
F9D2:	19 AE 69	
F9D5:	A8 19 23 346	DFB \$24,\$53,\$1B,\$
F9D8:	24 53 1B	DFB \$19,\$11 (A) FORMAT ABOVE
F9E1:	00 1A 5B	
F9E3:	5B A5 69 349	DFB \$0B,\$1A,\$5B,\$
F9E6:	24 24 350	DFB \$24,\$24 (B) FORMAT
F9E9:	AE AE AB	
F9EB:	AC 29 00 351	DFB \$AE,\$AE,\$AB,\$
F9EE:	7C 00 352	DFB \$7C,\$00 (C) FORMAT
F9F0:	15 9C 6D	
F9F3:	9C A5 69 353	DFB \$15,\$9C,\$6D,\$
F9F6:	29 9J 354	DFB \$29,\$53 (D) FORMAT
F9F8:	84 13 J4	
F9FB:	11 A5 69 355	DFB \$84,\$11,\$34,\$
F9FE:	23 A0 356	DFB \$23,\$A0 (E) FORMAT
FA00:	D0 02 5A	
FA03:	48 26 62 357 MNEMR	DFB \$D6,\$62,\$5A,\$
FA06:	94 B8 54	
FA09:	44 Cd 54 358	DFB \$94,\$88,\$54,\$
FAUC:	68 44 E8	
FAUF:	94 00 B4 359	DFB \$68,\$44,\$E8,\$
FA12:	08 84 74	
FA15:	B4 28 6E 360	DFB \$08,\$84,\$74,\$
FA18:	74 F4 CC	
FA1B:	4A 72 F2 361	DFB \$74,\$F4,\$CC,\$
FA1E:	A4 8A 362	DFB \$A4,\$8A (A) FORMAT
FA20:	00 AA A2	
FA23:	A2 74 74 363	DFB \$00,\$AA,\$A2,\$
FA26:	74 72 364	DFB \$74,\$72 (B) FORMAT
FA28:	44 68 B2	
FA2B:	32 82 00 365	DFB \$44,\$68,\$B2,\$
FA2E:	22 00 366	DFB \$22,\$00 (C) FORMAT
FA30:	1A 1A 26	
FA33:	26 72 72 367	DFB \$1A,\$1A,\$26,\$
FA36:	68 C8 368	DFB \$68,\$C8 (D) FORMAT
FA38:	C4 CA 26	
FA3B:	48 44 44 369	DFB \$C4,\$CA,\$26,\$
FA3E:	A2 C8 370	DFB \$A2,\$C8 (E) FORMAT
FA40:	FF FF FF 371	DFB \$FF,\$FF,\$FF
FA43:	20 DU F8 372 STEP	JSR INSTDSP DISASSEMBLE ONE INST
FA46:	68 373	PLA AT (PCL,H)
FA47:	85 2C 374	STA RTNL ADJUST TO USER
FA49:	66 375	PLA STACK, SAVE
FA4A:	85 2D 376	STA RTNH RTN ADR.
FA4C:	A2 06 377	LDX #SUS
FA4E:	8C 10 FB 378 XQINIT	LDA INITBL-1,X INIT XEQ AREA
FA51:	95 3C 379	STA XQT,X
FA53:	CA 380	DEX
FA54:	D0 F8 381	BNE XQINIT
FA56:	A1 J1 382	LDA (PCL,X) USER OPCODE BYTE
FA58:	F0 42 383	BEQ XBRK SPECIAL IF BREAK
FA5A:	A4 2F 384	LDT LENGTH LEN FROM DISASSEMBLY
FA5C:	C9 20 385	CMP #\$20
FA5E:	F0 59 386	BEQ XJSR HANDLE JSR, RTS, JMF,
FA60:	C9 60 387	CMP #\$60 JMP (), RTI SPECIAL
FA62:	F0 45 388	BEQ XRTS
FA64:	C9 4C 389	CMP #\$4C
FA66:	F0 5C 390	BEQ XJMP
FA68:	C9 6C 391	CMP #\$6C
FA6A:	F0 59 392	BEQ XJMPAT
FA6C:	C9 40 393	CMP #\$40
FA6E:	F0 35 394	BEQ XRTI
FA70:	29 1F 395	AND #\$1F
FA72:	49 14 396	EOR #\$14
FA74:	C9 04 397	CMP #\$04
FA76:	F0 02 398	BEQ XQ2 COPY USER INST TO XEQ AREA
FA78:	B1 3A 399 XQ1	LDX (PCL),Y WITH TRAILING NOPS
FA7A:	99 3C 00 400 XQ2	STA XQINZ,Y CHANGE REL BRANCH
		DISP TO 4 FOR

FA7D:	88	401	DEY	JMP TO BRANCH ON
FA7E:	10 F8	402	BPL XQ1	NBRANCH FROM XEQ.
FA80:	20 3F FF	403	JSR RESTORE	RESTORE USER REG CONTENTS.
FA81:	4C 3C 00	404	JMP XQTNZ	XEQ USER CP FROM RAM
FA82:	85 45	405	STA ACC	(RETURN TO NBRANCH)
FA83:	68	406	PLA	
FA84:	48	407	PHA	**IRQ HANDLER
FA85:	0A	408	ASL A	
FA86:	0A	409	ASL A	
FA87:	0A	410	ASL A	
FA88:	30 03	411	BMI BREAK	TEST FOR BREAK
FA89:	6C FE	03 412	JMP (IRQLOC)	USER ROUTINE VECTOR IN RAM
FA92:	26	413	PLP	
FA93:	20 4C FF	414	JSR SAVI	SAVE REG'S ON BREAK
FA94:	68	415	PLA	INCLUDING PC
FA95:	85 3A	416	STA PCL	
FA96:	68	417	PLA	
FA97:	45 JB	418	STA PCH	
FA98:	20 82 FB	419	XBRK JSR INSDSI	PRINT USER PC.
FA99:	20 DA FA	420	JSR RDSP1	AND REG'S
FAA2:	4C 65 FF	421	JMP MON	GO TO MONITOR
FAA5:	18	422	KRT1 CLC	
FAA6:	68	423	PLA	SIMULATE RTI BY EXPECTING
FAA7:	65 48	424	STA STATUS	STATUS FROM STACK, THEN RTS
FAA8:	08	425	XRTS PLA	RTS SIMULATION
FAA9:	85 3A	426	STA PCL	EXTRACT PC FROM STACK
FAAC:	68	427	PLA	AND UPDATE PC BY 1 (LEN=0)
FAAD:	65 JB	428	PCINC2 STA PCH	
FAAF:	A5 2F	429	PCINC3 LDA LENGTH	UPDATE PC BY LEN
FAB1:	20 56 F9	430	JSR PCADJ3	
FAB4:	64 3B	431	STY PCH	
FAB6:	18	432	CLC	
FAB7:	90 14	433	BCC NEWPCL	
FAB9:	18	434	XJSR CLC	
FABA:	20 54 F9	435	JSR PCADJ2	UPDATE PC AND PUSH
FADD:	AA	436	TAX	INTO STACK FOR
FADF:	98	437	TYA	JSR SIMULATE
FABF:	48	438	PHA	
FAC0:	0A	439	TXA	
FAC1:	48	440	PHA	
FAC2:	A0 02	441	LDY #S02	
FAC4:	18	442	XJMP CLC	
FAC5:	81 3A	443	XJMPAT LDA (PCL),Y	
FAC7:	AA	444	TAX	LOAD PC FOR JMP,
FAC8:	86	445	DEY	(JMP) SIMULATE.
FAC9:	81 3A	446	LDA (PCL),Y	
FACB:	66 JB	447	STX PCH	
FACC:	85 3A	448	NEWPCL STA PCL	
FACF:	80 F3	449	BCC XJMP	
FAD1:	A5 2D	450	RTNJMP LEA RTNH	
FAD3:	48	451	PHA	
FAD4:	A5 2C	452	LDA RTNL	
FAD6:	48	453	PHA	
FAD7:	20 BE FD	454	REGDSP JSR CROUT	DIRECTORY USER REG
FADA:	A9 45	455	RDSP1 LDA #ACC	CONTENTS WITH
FADC:	65 40	456	STA A3L	LABELS
FADF:	A9 00	457	LDA #ACC/256	
FAEU:	85 41	458	STA A3H	
FAE2:	A2 FB	459	LDX #SFB	
FAE4:	A9 A0	460	RDSPI LDA #SAU	
FAE6:	20 ED FD	461	JSR COUT	
FAE9:	BD 1E FA	462	LDA RTBL-SFB,X	
FAEC:	20 ED FD	463	JSR COUT	
FAF0:	A9 BD	464	LDA #SBD	
FAF1:	20 ED FD	465	JSR COUT	
FAF4:	B5 4A	466	LDA ACC+5,X	
FAF6:	20 DA FD	467	JSR PRBYTE	
FAFB:	E8	468	INX	
FAFA:	30 E8	469	BMI RDSP1	
FAPC:	60	470	RTS	
FAPD:	18	471	CLC	BRANCH TAKEN,
FAFE:	A0 01	472	LDY #S01	ADD LEN+2 TO PC
FBUU:	81 3A	473	LDA (PCL),Y	

FB02:	20	56	F9	474	JSR	PCADJ1		
FB03:	85	3A		475	STA	PCL		
FB07:	96			476	TYA			
FB08:	3A			477	SEC			
FB09:	B0	A2		478	BCS	PCINC2		
FB0B:	20	4A	FF	479	NBRNCH	JSR	SAVE	
FB0E:	38					SEC	NORMAL RETURN AFTER REQ USER OP	
FB0F:	B0	9E		481	BCS	PCINC3	GO UPDATE FC	
FB11:	EA	482		INITBL	NOP			
FB12:	EA	483			NOP		DUMMY FILL FOR	
FB13:	4C	0B	FB	484	JMP	NBRNCH	REQ AREA	
FB16:	4C	FD	FA	485	JMP	BRANCH		
FB19:	C1	486		RTBL	DFB	SC1		
FB1A:	D8	487			DFB	SD8		
FB1B:	D9	488			DFB	SD9		
FB1C:	D0	489			DFB	SD0		
FB1D:	D3	490			DFB	SD3		
FB1E:	AD	70	C0	491	PREAD	LDA	PTRIG	
FB21:	A0	00		492		LDY	#\$00	TRIGGER PADDLES
FB23:	EA	493			NOP		INIT COUNT	
FB24:	EA	494			NOP		COMPENSATE FOR 1ST COUNT	
FB25:	8C	04	C0	495	PREAD2	LDA	PADDL0,X	COUNT Y-REG EVERY
FB28:	10	04		496		BPL	RTS2D	12 USEC
FB2A:	Cd	497			INY			
FB2B:	00	Fe		498	BNE	PREAD2		EXIT AT 255 MAX
FB2D:	dd	499			DEY			
FB2E:	80	500		RTS2D	RTS			
FB2F:	A9	00	501	INIT	LDA	#\$00	CLR STATUS FOR DEBUG	
FB31:	d5	44		502	STA	STATUS	SOFTWARE	
FB33:	AD	56	C0	503	LDA	LORES		
FB36:	AD	54	C0	504	LDA	LOWSCR	INIT VIDEO MODE	
FB39:	AD	51	C0	505	SETXTT	LDA	TXTSET	SET FOR TEXT MODE
FB3C:	A9	00		506	LDA	#\$00	FULL SCREEN WINDOW	
FB3E:	F0	4B		507	BEQ	SETWND		
FB40:	AD	50	C0	508	SETGR	LDA	IXTCLR	SET FOR GRAPHICS MODE
FB43:	AD	53	C0	509	LDA	MIXSET	LOWER 4 LINES AS	
FB46:	20	36	FB	510		JSR	CLRTOP	TEXT WINDOW
FB49:	A9	14		511	LDA	#\$14		
FB48:	85	22		512	SETWND	STA	WNDDTOP	SET FOR 40 COL WINDOW
FB4D:	A9	00	513		LDA	#\$00	TOP IN A-REG,	
FB4F:	85	20		514	STA	WNDLFT	BTM AT LINE 24	
FB51:	A9	28		515	LDA	#\$28		
FB53:	85	21		516	STA	WNWDWDT		
FB55:	A9	18		517	LDA	#\$18		
FB57:	85	23		518	STA	WNDBTM	VTAB TO ROW 23	
FB59:	A9	17		519	LDA	#\$17		
FB5B:	85	25		520	TABV	STA	CV	VTAB TO ROW IN A-REG
FB5D:	4C	22	FC	521		JMP	VTAB	
FB60:	20	A4	FB	522	MULPM	JSR	MD1	ABS VAL OF AC AUX
FB63:	A0	10		523	MUL	LDY	#\$10	INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB65:	A5	50		524	MUL2	LDA	ACL	ACK * AUX * XTND
FB67:	4A			525		LSR	A	TO AC, XTND
FB68:	90	0C		526		BCC	MUL4	IF NO CARRY, NO PARTIAL PROD.
FB6A:	18			527		CLC		
FB6B:	A2	FE		528		LDX	+SFE	
FB6D:	B5	54		529	MUL3	LDA	XTNDL+2,X	ADD MPLND (AUX)
FB6F:	75	56		530		ADC	AUXL+2,X	TO PARTIAL PROD
FB71:	95	54		531		STA	XTNDL+2,X	(XTND).
FB73:	E8			532		INX		
FB74:	00	F7		533		JNE	MUL3	
FB76:	A2	03		534	MUL4	LDX	#\$03	
FB78:	76			535	MUL5	DFB	#\$76	
FB79:	50			536		DFB	#\$50	
FB7A:	CA			537		DEX		
FB7B:	10	FB		538		BPL	MUL5	
FB7D:	88			539		DEY		
FB7E:	00	E5		540		BNE	MUL2	
FB80:	80			541		RTS		
FB81:	20	A4	FB	542	DIVPM	JSR	MD1	ABS VAL OF AC, AUX.
FB84:	A0	10		543	DIV	LDY	#\$10	INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB86:	06	50		544	DIV2	ASL	ACL	
FB88:	26	51		545		ROL	ACB	
FB8A:	26	52		546		ROL	XTNDL	XTND/AUX

F89C:	2e	53	547		ROL	XTNDB	TO AC.
F89E:	3d		548		SEC		
F89F:	A5	52	549		LDA	XTNDL	
FB91:	E5	54	550		SBC	AUXL	MOD TO XTNB.
FB93:	AA		551		TAX		
FB94:	A5	53	552		LDA	XTNDH	
FB96:	E5	55	553		SBC	AUXH	
FB98:	90	00	554		BCC	DIVJ	
FB9A:	d6	52	555		STX	XTNDL	
FB9C:	85	53	556		STA	XTNDH	
FB9E:	E6	00	557		INC	ACL	
FBA0:	dd		558	DIVJ	DEY		
FBA1:	D6	E3	559		BNE	DIV2	
FBA2:	60		560		RTS		
FBA4:	A0	00	561	MD1	LDY	#\$00	
FBA6:	B4	2F	562		STY	SIGN	ABS VAL OF AC, AUX
FBA8:	A2	54	563		LDX	#AUXL	WITH RESULT SIGN
FBA9:	20	AF	FB		JSR	MC2	IN LSB OF SIGN.
FBAD:	A2	50	565		LDX	#ACL	
FBAF:	B5	J1	566	MD2	LDA	LOC1,X	X SPECIFIES AC OR AUX
FBB1:	10	0D	567		BPL	MERTS	
FBB3:	3d		568		SEC		
FBB4:	98		569	MD3	TYA		
FBB5:	F5	00	570		SBC	LOC0,X	COMPL SPECIFIED REG
FBB7:	95	00	571		STA	LOC0,X	IF NEG.
FBB9:	98		572		TYA		
FBBAA:	F5	J1	573		SBC	LOC1,X	
FBBCC:	95	J1	574		STA	LOC1,X	
FBBE:	E6	2F	575		INC	SIGN	
FBC0:	60		576	MERTS	RTS		
FBC1:	48		577	BASCALC	PHA		CALC BASE ADR IN BASL.H
FBC2:	4A		578		LSR	A	FOR GIVEN LINE NO.
FBC3:	29	03	579		AND	#\$03	0<=LINE NO.<=\$17
FBC5:	09	04	580		ORA	#\$04	ARG=000ABCDE, GENERATE
FBC7:	65	29	581		STA	BASH	BASH=000001CD
FBC9:	68		582		PLA		AND
FBCA:	29	10	583		AND	#\$10	BASL=EABAB000
FBCB:	90	02	584		BCC	BSCLC2	
FBCD:	69	7F	585		ADC	#\$7F	
FBD0:	65	28	586	BSCLC2	STA	BASL	
FBD2:	0A		587		ASL	A	
FBD3:	0A		588		ASL	A	
FBD4:	05	28	589		ORA	BASL	
FBD6:	65	28	590		STA	BASL	
FBD8:	60		591		RTS		
FBD9:	C9	47	592	BELL1	CMP	#\$07	BELL CHAR? (CNTRL-G)
FBDB:	D0	12	593		BNE	RTS2B	NO, RETURN
FBD2:	A9	40	594		LDA	#\$40	DELAY .1 SECNDS
FBD5:	20	AE	FC		JSR	WAIT	
FBD2:	A0	C0	595		LDY	#\$C0	
FBD4:	A9	9C	597	BELL2	LDA	#\$0C	TOGGLE SPEAKER AT
FBD5:	20	A8	FC		JSR	WAIT	1 KHZ FOR .1 SEC.
FBD9:	AD	30	CO		LDA	SPKR	
FBDG:	63		600		DEY		
FBD6:	D0	P5	601		BNE	BELL2	
FBD8:	60		602	RTS2B	RTS		
FBD0:	A4	24	603	STOADV	LDY	CH	CURSOR R INDEX TO Y-REG
FBD2:	91	20	604		STA	(BASL),Y	STOR CHAR IN LINE
FBD4:	E6	24	605	ADVANCE	INC	CH	INCREMENT CURSOR R INDEX
FBD6:	A5	24	606		LDA	CH	(MOVE RIGHT)
FBD8:	C5	21	607		CMP	WNDWDTB	BEYOND WINDOW WIDTH?
FBD9:	B0	65	608		BCS	CR	YES CR TO NEXT LINE
FBDG:	60		609	RTSJ	RTS		NO, RETURN
FBD2:	C9	A0	610	VIDOUT	CAP	#\$A0	CONTROL CHAR?
FBD8:	B0	EF	611		BCS	STOADV	NO, OUTPUT IT.
FC01:	A0		612		TAY		INVERSE VIDEO?
FC02:	10	EC	613		BPL	STOADV	YES, OUTPUT IT.
FC04:	C9	6D	614		CMP	#\$SD	CR?
FC06:	F0	5A	615		SEC	CR	YES.
FC08:	C9	A0	616		CMP	#\$dA	LINE FEED?
FC0A:	F0	5A	617		SEQ	LP	IF SO, DO IT.
FC0C:	C9	6B	618		CMP	#\$88	BACK SPACE? (CNTRL-H)
FC0E:	D0	C9	619		BNE	BELL1	NO, CHECK FOR BELL.

FC10:	C6 24	620	85		DEC CH	DECREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FC12:	10 EB	621			BPL RTS3	IF POS, OK, ELSE MOVE UP
FC14:	A5 21	622			LDA WNDWDTH	SET CH TO WNDWDTH-1
FC16:	65 24	623			STA CH	
FC18:	C6 24	624			DEC CH	(RIGHTMOST SCREEN POS)
FC1A:	A5 22	625	UP		LDA WNDTOP	CURSER V INDEX
FC1C:	C5 25	626			CMP CV	
FC1E:	B0 08	627			BCS RTS4	IF TOP LINE THEN RETURN
FC20:	C6 25	628			DEC CV	DECR CURSER V-INDEX
FC22:	A5 25	629	VTAB		LDA CV	GET CURSER V-INDEX
FC24:	20 C1 FB	630	VTABZ		JSR BASCALC	GENERATE BASE ADDR
FC27:	65 20	631			ADC WNDLFT	ADD WINDOW LEFT INDEX
FC29:	85 28	632			STA BASL	TO BASL
FC2B:	60	633	RTS4		RTS	
FC2C:	49 C0	634	ESCI		EDR #SCU	ESC?
FC2E:	F0 28	635			SEQ HOME	IF SO, DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30:	69 FD	636			ADC #SF0	ESC-A OR S CHECK
FC32:	90 C0	637			BCC ADVANCE	A, ADVANCE
FC34:	F0 DA	638			BEQ BS	S, BACKSPACE
FC36:	69 FD	639			ADC #SF0	ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38:	90 2C	640			BCC LP	C, DOWN
FC3A:	F0 DE	641			BEQ UP	D, GO UP
FC3C:	69 FD	642			ADC #SF0	ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E:	90 SC	643			BCC CLREOL	E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40:	00 09	644			BNE RTS4	NOT F, RETURN
FC42:	A4 24	645	CLREOP		LDY CH	CURSOR H TO Y INDEX
FC44:	A5 25	646			LDA CV	CURSOR V TO A-REGISTER
FC46:	48	647	CLEOP1		PHA	SAVE CURRENT LINE ON STK
FC47:	20 24 FC	648			JSR VTABZ	CALC BASE ADDRESS
FC4A:	20 9E FC	649			JSR CLEOLZ	CLEAR TO EOL, SET CARRY
FC4D:	A0 00	650			LDY #\$00	CLEAR FROM H INDEX=0 FOR REST
FC4F:	68	651			PLA	INCREMENT CURRENT LINE
FC50:	69 00	652			ADC #\$00	(CARRY IS SET)
FC52:	C5 23	653			CMP WNDBIM	DONE TO BOTTOM OF WINDOW?
FC54:	90 FD	654			BCC CLEOP1	NO, KEEP CLEARING LINES
FC56:	B0 CA	655			BCS VTAB	YES, TAB TO CURRENT LINE
FC58:	A5 22	656	HOME		LDA WNDTOP	INIT CURSOR V
FC5A:	65 25	657			STA CV	AND H-INDICES
FC5E:	A0 00	658			LDY #\$00	
FC60:	04 24	659			STY CH	THEN CLEAR TO END OF PAGE
FC61:	F0 E4	660			SEQ CLEOP1	
FC62:	A9 00	661	CR		LDA #\$00	CURSOR TO LEFT OF INDEX
FC64:	65 24	662			STA CH	(RET CURSOR H=0)
FC66:	E6 25	663	LF		INC CV	INCR CURSOR V(DOWN 1 LINE)
FC68:	A5 25	664			LDA CV	
FC6A:	C5 23	665			CMP WNDSTM	OFF SCREEN?
FC6C:	90 00	666			BCC VTAEZ	NO, SET BASE ADDR
FC6E:	C6 25	667			DEC CV	DECR CURSOR V(BACK TO BOTTOM)
FC70:	A5 22	668	SCROLL		LDA WNDTOP	START AT TOP OF SCR WNDW
FC72:	48	669			PHA	
FC73:	20 24 FC	670			JSR VTABZ	GENERATE BASE ADDRESS
FC76:	A5 28	671	SCRLL1		LDA BASL	COPY BASL,H
FC78:	B5 2A	672			STA BAS2L	TO BAS2L,H
FC7A:	A5 29	673			LDA BASH	
FC7C:	B5 2B	674			STA BAS2H	
FC7E:	A4 21	675			LDY WNDWDTH	
FC80:	68	676			DEY	INIT Y TO RIGHTMOST INDEX
FC81:	68	677			PLA	OF SCROLLING WINDOW
FC82:	69 01	678			ADC #\$01	INCR LINE NUMBER
FC84:	C5 23	679			CMP WNDSTM	DONE?
FC86:	80 00	680			BCS SCRLL3	YES, FINISH
FC88:	48	681			PHA	
FC89:	20 24 FC	682			JSR VTABZ	FORM BASL,H (BASE ADDR)
FC8C:	B1 28	683	SCRLL2		LDA (BASL),Y	MOVE A CHR UP ON LINE
FC8E:	91 2A	684			STA (BAS2L),Y	
FC90:	68	685			DEY	NEXT CHAR OF LINE
FC91:	10 F9	686			SPL SCRLL2	
FC93:	30 E1	687			BMI SCRLL1	NEXT LINE
FC95:	A0 00	688	SCRLL3		LDY #\$00	CLEAR BOTTOM LINE
FC97:	20 9E FC	689			JSR CLEOLZ	GET BASE ADDR FOR BOTTOM LINE
FC9A:	B0 00	690			BCS VTAB	CARRY IS SET
FC9C:	A4 24	691	CLREOL		LDY CH	CURSOR H INDEX
FC9E:	A9 00	692	CLEOLZ		LDA #SAU	

FCAU:	91 26	093	CLEOL2	STA (BASL),Y	STORE BLANKS FROM 'HERE'
FCAZ:	C8	694		INY	TO END OF LINES (WNDWDTH)
FCAJ:	C4 21	695		CPY WNDWDTH	
FCAS:	90 F9	696		BCC CLEOL2	
FCAV:	60	697		RTS	
FCAv0:	38	698	WAIT	SEC	
FCAv1:	48	699	WAIT2	PHA	
FCAA:	E9 01	700	WAIT3	SBC #\$01	
FCAC:	00 FC	701		SNE WAIT3	1.0204 USEC
FCAE:	98	702		PLA	(13+2712*A+512*A*A)
FCAF:	E9 01	703		SBC #\$01	
FCB1:	00 F6	704		BNE WAIT2	
FCB2:	60	705		RTS	
FCB4:	E8 42	706	NXTA4	INC A4L	INCR 2-BYTE A4
FCB6:	00 02	707		BNE NXTA1	AND A1
FCB8:	E8 43	708		INC A4H	
FCBA:	A5 3C	709	NXTA1	LDA A1L	INCR 2-BYTE A1.
FCBC:	C5 3E	710		CMP A2L	
FCBD:	A5 3D	711		LDA A1H	AND COMPARE TO A2
FCCU:	E5 3F	712		SBC A2H	
FCC2:	E6 3C	713		INC A1L	(CARRY SET IF >=)
FCC4:	00 02	714		BNE RTS48	
FCC6:	E6 3D	715		INC A1H	
FCC8:	60	716	RTS48	RTS	
FCC9:	A0 48	717	HEADR	LDY #\$48	WRITE A*256 'LONG 1'
FCCB:	20 DB FC	718		JSR ZERDLY	HALF CYCLES
FCCD:	00 F9	719		BNE HEADR	(650 USEC EACH)
FCG0:	69 FE	720		ADC #\$FE	
FCG2:	00 F5	721		BCS HEADR	THEN A 'SHORT 0'
FCG4:	A0 21	722		LDY #\$21	(400 USEC)
FCG6:	20 DB FC	723	WRBIT	JSR ZERDLY	WRITE TWO HALF CYCLES
FCG9:	C8	724		INY	OF 250 USEC ('0')
FCGA:	C8	725		INY	OR 500 USEC ('1')
FCGJ:	68	726	ZERDLY	DEY	
FCDC:	00 FD	727		BNE ZERDLY	
FCDE:	90 05	728		BCC WRTAPE	Y IS COUNT FOR
FCEU:	A0 32	729		LDY #\$32	TIMING LOOP
FCE2:	68	730	ONEDLY	DEY	
FCEJ:	00 FD	731		BNE ONEDLY	
FCE5:	AC 20 C0	732	WRTAPE	LDY TAPEOUT	
FCE6:	A0 2C	733		LDY #\$2C	
FCEA:	CA	734		DEX	
FCEB:	60	735		RTS	
FCEC:	A2 08	736	RDBYTE	LDX #\$08	8 BITS TO READ
FCEC:	48	737	RDBYT2	PHA	READ TWO TRANSITIONS
FCEF:	20 FA FC	738		JSR RD2BIT	(FIND EDGE)
FCP2:	68	739		PLA	
FCF3:	2A	740		ROL A	NEXT BIT
FCF4:	A0 3A	741		LDY #\$3A	COUNT FOR SAMPLES
FCF6:	CA	742		DEX	
FCF7:	00 F5	743		BNE RDBYT2	
FCF9:	60	744		RTS	
FCFA:	20 FD FC	745	RD2BIT	JSR RD2BIT	
FCFD:	68	746	RD2BIT	DEY	GECR Y UNTIL
FCFE:	AD 60 C0	747		LDA TAPEIN	TAPE TRANSITION
FDU1:	45 2F	748		EOR LASTIN	
FDU2:	10 F8	749		BPL RD2BIT	
FDU3:	45 2F	750		EOR LASTIN	
FDU4:	85 2F	751		STA LASTIN	
FDU5:	C0 00	752		COPY #\$80	SET CARRY ON Y-REG.
FDUB:	60	753		RTS	
FDUC:	A4 24	754	RDRKEY	LDY CH	
FDUE:	B1 2d	755		LDA (BASL),Y	SET SCREEN TO FLASH
FDIU:	48	756		PHA	
FDI1:	29 3F	757		AND #\$3F	
FDI3:	09 10	758		ORA #\$40	
FDI5:	91 2e	759		STA (BASL),Y	
FDI7:	68	760		PLA	
FDI8:	9C 38 00	761		JMP (KSWL)	GO TO USER KEY-IN
FDI9:	E6 4E	762	KEYIN	INC RNDL	
FDI0:	00 02	763		BNE KEYINZ	INCR RND NUMBER
FDI1:	E6 4F	764		INC RNDH	
FDI2:	2C 00 C0	765	KEYINZ	BIT KBD	KEY DOWN?

FD24:	10	F5	766	BPL	KEYIN	LOOP
FD26:	91	20	767	STA	(BASL),Y	REPLACE FLASHING SCREEN
FD28:	AD	00	C0	LDA	KBD	GET KEYCODE
FD2B:	20	10	C0	BIT	KBDSTRB	CLR KEY STROBE
FD2E:	60		770	RTS		
FD2F:	20	0C	FD	771	ESC	JSR RDKEY
FD32:	20	2C	FC	772		JSR ESC1
FD35:	20	0C	FD	773	RDCHAR	JSR RDKEY
FD38:	C9	98		774		CMP #\$98
FD3A:	F0	F3		775		BEQ ESC
FD3C:	60		776			RTS
FD3D:	A5	32		777	NOTCR	LDA INVFLG
FD3F:	48		778			PHP
FD40:	A9	FF	779			LDA #\$FF
FD42:	B5	32	780			STA INVFLG
FD44:	BD	00	02	781		LDA IN,X
FD47:	20	ED	FD	782		JSR COUT
FD48:	68		783			PLA
FD49:	85	32	784			STA INVFLG
FD4D:	BD	00	02	785		LDA IN,X
FD51:	C9	68	786			CMP #\$88
FD52:	F0	1D	787			BEQ BCKSPC
FD54:	C9	98	788			CMP #\$98
FD56:	F0	0A	789			SEQ CANCEL
FD58:	E0	F8	790			Cpx #\$P8
FD5A:	90	03	791			BCC NOTCR1
FD5C:	20	3A	FF	792		JSR BELL
FD5F:	E6		793	NOTCR1		INX
FD60:	DU	13	794			BNE NXTCAR
FD62:	A9	DC	795	CANCEL		LDA #SDC
FD64:	20	ED	FD	796		JSR COUT
FD67:	20	0E	FD	797	GETLNZ	JSR CROUT
FD6A:	A5	33	798	GETLN		LDA PROMPT
FD6C:	20	ED	FD	799		JSR COUT
FD6F:	A2	01	800			LDX #\$01
FD71:	8A		801	BCKSPC		TXA
FD72:	F0	F3	802			REC GETLNZ
FD74:	CA		803			DEX
FD75:	20	35	FD	804	NXTCHAR	JSR RDCHAR
FD78:	C9	95	805			CMP #\$ICK
FD7A:	D0	02	806			BNE CAPTST
FD7C:	B1	26	807			LDA (BASL),Y
FD7E:	C9	E0	808	CAPTST		CMP #\$EO
FD80:	90	02	809			BCC ADDINP
FD82:	29	0F	810			AND #\$DF
FD84:	90	00	02	811	ADDINP	STA IN,X
FD87:	C9	6D	812			CMP #\$8D
FD89:	D0	32	813			BNE NOICR
FD90:	20	9C	FC	814		JSR CLREOL
FD92:	A9	0D	815	CROUT		LDA #\$BD
FD94:	00	5B	816			BNE COUT
FD92:	A4	3D	817	PRA1		LDY A1H
FD94:	A6	3C	818			LDX A1L
FD96:	20	0E	FD	819	PRYX2	JSR CROUT
FD99:	20	40	F9	820		JSR PRNTYX
FD9C:	A0	00	821			LDY #\$0C
FD9E:	A9	AD	822			LDA #\$AD
FD9A:	4C	ED	FD	823		JMP COUT
FD93:	A5	3C	824	XANS		LDA A1L
FD95:	09	07	825			OAA #\$07
FD97:	65	3E	826			STA A2L
FD99:	A5	3D	827			LDA A1H
FDAB:	65	3F	828			STA A2H
FDAD:	A5	3C	829	HODSCHK		LDA A1L
FDAC:	29	07	830			AND #\$07
FD81:	D0	33	831			BNE DATAOUT
FD83:	20	92	FD	832	XAM	JSR PRA1
FD86:	A9	A0	833	DATAOUT		LDA #\$A0
FD88:	20	ED	FD	834		JSR COUT
FD8B:	B1	3C	835			LDA (A1L),Y
FD8D:	20	DA	FD	836		JSR PRBYTE
FD8C:	20	BA	FC	837		JSR NXTAI

FDC3:	90 EB	838		BCC	MOD8CK	CHECK IF TIME TO,
FDC5:	60	839	RTS 4C	RTS		PRINT ADDR
FDC6:	4A	840	XAMPM	LSR	A	DETERMINE IF MCN
FDC7:	90 EA	841		BCC	XAM	MODE IS XAM
FDC9:	4A	842		LSR	A	ADD, OR SUB
FDCA:	4A	843		LSR	A	
FDCB:	A5 3E	844		LDA	A2L	
FDCD:	90 02	845		BCC	ADD	
FDCF:	49 FF	846		EOR	#\$FF	SUB: FORM 2'S COMPLEMENT
FDD1:	65 3C	847	ADD	ADC	A1L	
FDD3:	46	848		PHA		
FDD4:	A9 BD	849		LDA	#\$BD	
FDD6:	20 ED FD	850		JSR	COUT	PRINT '=', THEN RESULT
FDD9:	68	851		PLA		
FDDA:	46	852	PRBYTE	PHA		PRINT BYTE AS 2 HEX
FDDB:	4A	853		LSR	A	DIGITS, DESTROYS A-REG
FDDC:	4A	854		LSR	A	
FDDD:	4A	855		LSR	A	
FDDF:	4A	856		LSR	A	
FDDF:	20 E5 FD	857		JSR	PRHEX2	
FDE2:	68	858		PLA		
FDE3:	29 0F	859	PRHEX	AND	#\$0F	PRINT HEX DIG IN A-REG
FDE5:	09 30	860	PRHEX2	CRA	#\$B0	LSB'S
FDE7:	C9 3A	861		CMP	#\$BA	
FDE9:	90 02	862		BCC	COUT	
FDEB:	69 06	863		ADC	#\$06	
FDEF:	6C 39 30	864	COUT	JMP	(CSW1)	VECTOR TO USER OUTPUT ROUTINE
FDF0:	C9 A0	865	COUT1	CMP	#\$A0	
FDF2:	90 02	866		BCC	COUT2	DON'T OUTPUT CTRL'S INVERSE
FDF4:	25 32	867		AND	INVFLG	MASK WITH INVERSE FLAG
FDF6:	84 35	868	COUT2	STY	YSAVI	SAV Y-REG
FDF8:	48	869		PHA		SAV A-REG
FDF9:	20 FD FB	870		JSR	VIDOUT	OUTPUT A-REG AS ASCII
FDFC:	68	871		PLA		RESTORE A-REG
FDFF:	A4 35	872		LDY	YSAVI	AND Y-REG
FE00:	60	873		RTS		THEN RETURN
FE01:	C6 34	874	BLI	DEC	YSAV	
FE02:	F0 9F	875		SEQ	XAM8	
FE04:	CA	876	BLANK	DEX		BLANK TO NON
FE05:	D0 16	877		BNE	SETMD2	AFTER BLANK
FE07:	C9 3A	878		CMP	#\$BA	DATA STORE MODE?
FE09:	D0 3B	879		BNE	XAMPM	NO, XAM, ADD OR SUB
FE0D:	85 31	880	STOR	STA	MODE	KEEP IN STORE MODE
FE0D:	A5 3E	881		LDA	A2L	
FE0F:	91 40	882		STA	(A3L),Y	STORE AS LOW BYTE AS (A3)
FE11:	E6 40	883		INC	A3L	
FE13:	D0 02	884		BNE	RTSS	INCR A3, RETURN
FE15:	E6 41	885		INC	A3H	
FE17:	60	886	RTS5	RTS		
FE18:	A4 34	887	SETMODE	LDY	YSAV	SAVE CONVERTED ':', '+',
FE1A:	B9 2F 01	888		LDA	IN-1,Y	'-', '.' AS MODE.
FE1D:	85 31	889	SETMD2	STA	MODE	
FE1F:	60	890		RTS		
FE20:	A2 01	891	LT	LDX	#\$01	
FE22:	B5 3E	892	LT2	LDA	A2L,X	COPY A2 (2 BYTES) TO
FE24:	95 42	893		STA	A4L,X	A4 AND A5
FE26:	95 44	894		STA	A5L,X	
FE28:	CA	895		DEX		
FE29:	10 F7	896		SPL	LT2	
FE2B:	60	897		RTS		
FE2C:	B1 3C	898	MOVE	LDA	(A1L),Y	MOVE (A1 TO A2) TO
FE2D:	91 42	899		STA	(A4L),Y	(A4)
FE30:	20 B4 FC	900		JSR	NXTIA4	
FE31:	90 F7	901		BCC	MOVE	
FE35:	60	902		RTS		
FE38:	B1 3C	903	VFY	LDA	(A1L),Y	VERIFY (A1 TO A2) WITH
FE38:	D1 42	904		CMP	(A4L),Y	(A4)
FE3A:	F0 1C	905		BEC	VFYOK	
FE3C:	20 92 FD	906		JSR	PRAI	
FE3F:	B1 3C	907		LDA	(A1L),Y	
FE41:	20 DA FD	908		JSR	PRBYTE	
FE44:	A9 A0	909		LDA	#\$A0	
FE46:	20 ED FD	910		JSR	COUT	

FE49:	A9 A8	911	LDA	#\$A9	
FE4B:	20 ED	912	JSR	COUT	
FE4E:	B1 42	913	LDA	(A4L),Y	
FE50:	20 DA	914	JSR	PBYTE	
FE53:	A9 A9	915	LDA	#\$A9	
FE55:	20 ED	916	JSR	COUT	
FE58:	20 34	917	VFYOK	JSR	NXTA4
FE5B:	90 C9	918	BCC	VFY	
FE5D:	60	919	RTS		
FE5E:	20 75	920	LIST	JSR	A1PC
FE61:	A9 14	921	LDA	#\$14	MOVE A1 (2 BYTES) TO PC IF SPEC'D AND DISSEMBLE 20 INTRS
FE63:	48	922	LIST2	PHA	
FE64:	20 00	923	JSR	INSTDSP	
FE67:	20 53	924	JSR	PCADJ	ADJUST PC EACH INSTR
FE6A:	65 JA	925	STA	PCL	
FE6C:	84 JB	926	STY	PCH	
FE6E:	60	927	PLA		
FE6F:	18	928	SEC		
FE70:	E9 01	929	SBC	#\$01	NEXT OF 20 INSTR
FE72:	D0 EF	930	BNE	LIST2	
FE74:	60	931	RTS		
FE75:	6A	932	A1PC	TXA	IP USER SPEC'D ADR
FE76:	F0 07	933	SEQ	A1PCRTS	COPY FROM A1 TO PC
FE78:	B5 3C	934	A1PCLP	LDA	A1L,X
FE7A:	95 JA	935	STA	PCL,X	
FE7C:	CA	936	DEX		
FE7D:	10 F9	937	BPL	A1PCLP	
FE7F:	60	938	A1PCRTS	RTS	
FE80:	A0 3F	939	SETINV	LDY	#\$3F
FE82:	D0 02	940	BNE	SETIFLG	SET FOR INVERSE VID VIA COUT1
FE84:	A0 FF	941	SETNORM	LDY	#\$FF
FE86:	84 32	942	SETIFLG	STY	INVFLG
FE88:	60	943	RTS		
FE89:	A9 00	944	SETKBD	LDA	#\$00
FE8B:	85 3E	945	IMPORT	STA	A2L
FE8D:	A2 36	946	INPUT	LDX	#\$KSWL
FE8F:	A0 1B	947	LDY	#KEYIN	
FE91:	D0 08	948	BNE	IOPRT	
FE93:	A9 00	949	SETVID	LDA	#\$00
FE95:	85 3E	950	OUTPORT	STA	A2L
FE97:	A2 36	951	OUTPRT	LDX	#\$CSNL
FE99:	A0 F0	952	LDY	#COUT1	
FE9B:	A5 3E	953	IOPRT	LDA	A2L
FE9D:	29 0F	954	AND	#\$FF	SET RAM IN/OUT VECTORS
FE9F:	F0 06	955	SEQ	IOPRT1	
FEA1:	09 C0	956	ORA	#IOADR/256	
FEA3:	A0 00	957	LDY	#\$00	
FEA5:	F0 02	958	SEQ	IOPRT2	
FEA7:	A9 FD	959	IOPRT1	LDA	#COUT1/256
FEA9:	94 00	960	IOPRT2	STY	LC00,X
FEAB:	95 01	961	STA	LOC1,X	
FEAD:	60	962	RTS		
FEAE:	EA	963	NOP		
FEAF:	EA	964	NOP		
FE80:	4C 00	965	XBASIC	JMP	BASIC
FE81:	4C 03	966	BASCONT	JMP	BASIC2
FE86:	20 75	967	GD	JSR	A1PC
FE89:	20 3F	968	JSR	RESTORE	ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEBC:	6C 3A	969	JMP	(PCL)	RESTORE META REGS
FEBF:	4C D7	970	REGZ	JMP	GO TO USER SUBR
FEC2:	C6 34	971	TRACE	DEC	TO REG DISPLAY
FEC4:	20 75	972	STEPZ	JSR	A1PC
FEC7:	4C 43	973	JMP	STEP	ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FECA:	4C F8	974	USR	JMP	TAKE ONE STEP
FECB:	A9 40	975	WRITE	LDA	TO USR SUBR AT USRADR
FECF:	20 C9	976	JSR	HEADR	WRITE 10-SEC HEADER
FED2:	A0 27	977	LDY	#\$27	
FED4:	A2 00	978	WRI	LDX	#\$00
FED6:	41 3C	979	EOR	(A1L,X)	
FED8:	48	980	PHA		
FED9:	A1 3C	981	LDA	(A1L,X)	

FE0B:	20 2D FE 982		JSR	WRBYTE	
FE0C:	20 0A FC 983		JSR	NXTA1	
FE0E:	A0 1D 984		LDY	#\$1D	
FE0F:	68 985		PLA		
FE14:	90 EE 986		BCC	WRI	
FE16:	A0 22 987		LDY	#\$22	
FE18:	20 ED FE 988		JSR	WRBYTE	
FE19:	F0 40 989		SEC	BELL	
FE1D:	A2 10 990	WRBYTE	LDX	#\$10	
FE1F:	0A 991	WRBYT2	ASL	A	
FE20:	20 D6 FC 992		JSR	WRBIT	
FE23:	00 FA 993		BNE	WRBYT2	
FE25:	60 994		RTS		
FE26:	20 00 FE 995	CRMON	JSR	BLI	HANDLE CR AS BLANK
FE29:	68 996		PLA		THEN POP STACK
FE2A:	68 997		PLA		AND RIN TO MON
FE2B:	00 6C 998		BNE	MNZ	
FE2D:	20 FA FC 999	READ	JSR	RD2BIT	FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF00:	A9 16 1000		LDA	#\$16	
FF02:	20 C9 FC 1001		JSR	HEADR	
FF05:	65 2E 1002		STA	CHKSUM	DELAY 1.5 SECONDS
FF07:	20 FA FC 1003		JSR	RD2BIT	INIT CHKSUM=\$PF
FF0A:	A0 24 1004	RD2	LDY	#\$24	FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF0C:	20 FD FC 1005		JSR	RDBIT	LOOK FOR SYNC BIT
FF0F:	B0 F9 1006		BCS	RD2	(SHORT 0)
FF11:	20 PD FC 1007		JSR	RDBIT	LOOP UNTIL FOUND
FF14:	A0 30 1008		LEY	#\$3B	SKIP SECOND SYNC H-CYCLE
FF16:	20 EC FC 1009	RD3	JSR	RDBYTE	INDEX FOR J/I TEST
FF19:	81 3C 1010		STA	(A1L,X)	READ A BYTE
FF1B:	45 2E 1011		EOR	CHKSUM	STORE AT (A1)
FF1D:	65 2E 1012		STA	CHKSUM	
FF1F:	20 BA FC 1013		JSR	NXTA1	UPDATE RUNNING CHKSUM
FF22:	A0 35 1014		LDY	#\$35	INCR A1, COMPARE TO A2
FF24:	90 F0 1015		BCC	RD3	COMPENSATE L/I INDEX
FF26:	20 EC FC 1016		JSR	RDBYTE	LOOP UNTIL DONE
FF29:	C5 2E 1017		CMP	CHKSUM	READ CHKSUM BYTE
FF2B:	F0 0D 1018		BEQ	BELL	GOOD, SOUND BELL AND RETURN
FF2D:	A9 CS 1019	PERR	LDA	#\$C5	
FF2F:	20 ED FD 1020		JSR	COUT	PRINT "ERR", THEN BELL
FF32:	A9 D2 1021		LDA	#\$D2	
FF34:	20 ED FD 1022		JSR	COUT	
FF37:	20 ED FD 1023		JSR	COUT	
FF3A:	A9 37 1024	BELL	LDA	#\$87	OUTPUT BELL AND RETURN
FF3C:	4C ED FD 1025		JAP	COUT	
FF3F:	A5 48 1026	RESTORE	LDA	STATUS	RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF41:	48 1027		PHA		USED BY DEBUG SOFTWARE
FF42:	A5 45 1028		LDA	ACC	
FF44:	A6 46 1029	RESTRI	LDX	XREG	
FF46:	A4 47 1030		LDY	YREG	
FF48:	20 1031		PLP		
FF49:	60 1032		RTS		
FF4A:	65 45 1033	SAVE	STA	ACC	SAVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF4C:	66 46 1034	SAVL	STX	XREG	
FF4E:	64 47 1035		STY	YREG	
FF50:	68 1036		PHP		
FF51:	68 1037		PLA		
FF52:	65 48 1038		STA	STATUS	
FF54:	BA 1039		TSX		
FF55:	66 49 1040		STX	SPNT	
FF57:	D8 1041		CLD		
FF58:	60 1042		RTS		
FF59:	20 64 FE 1043	RESET	JSR	SETNORM	SET SCREEN MODE
FF5C:	20 2F FB 1044		JSR	INIT	AND INIT KBD/SCREEN
FF5F:	20 93 FE 1045		JSR	SETVID	AS I/O DEV'S
FF62:	20 59 FE 1046		JSR	SE1KBD	
FF65:	D0 1047	MON	CLD		MUST SET HEX MODE!
FF66:	20 JA FE 1048		JSR	BELL	
FF69:	A9 AA 1049	MNZ	LDA	#\$AA	*** PROMPT FOR MON
FF6B:	85 33 1050		STA	PROMPT	
FF6D:	20 57 FD 1051		JSR	GETLNZ	READ A LINE
FF70:	20 C7 FF 1052		JSR	ZMODE	CLEAR MON MODE, SCAN IDX
FF73:	20 A7 FF 1053	NXTITM	JSR	GETNUM	GET ITEM, NON-HEX
FF76:	84 34 1054		STY	YSAV	CHAR IN A-REG

FF78:	A0 17	1055	LDY #\$17	X-REG=0 IF NO HEX INPUT
FF7A:	88	1056 CHRSRCH	DEY	
FF7B:	30 E8	1057	BMI MON	NOT FOUND, GO TO MON
FF7D:	D9 CC FF	1058	CMP CHRTBL,Y	FIND CMND CHAR IN TEL
FF80:	D0 F8	1059	BNE CHRSRCH	
FF82:	20 BE FF	1060	JSR TCSUB	FOUND, CALL CORRESPONDING
FF85:	A4 34	1061	LDY YSAV	SUBROUTINE
FF87:	4C 73 FF	1062	JMP NXITM	
FF8A:	A2 03	1063 DIG	LDX #\$03	
FF8C:	0A	1064	ASL A	
FF8D:	0A	1065	ASL A	GOT HEX DIG,
FF8E:	0A	1066	ASL A	SHIFT INTO A2
FF8F:	0A	1067	ASL A	
FF90:	0A	1068 NXBIT	ASL A	
FF91:	26 3E	1069	ROL A2L	
FF93:	26 3F	1070	ROL A2H	
FF95:	CA	1071	DEX	LEAVE X=\$FF IF DIG
FF96:	10 Fe	1072	3PL NXBIT	
FF98:	A5 11	1073 NXTBAS	LDA MODE	
FF9A:	DD 06	1074	BNE NXTBSS2	IF MODE IS ZERO
FF9C:	B5 3F	1075	LDA A2H,X	THEN COPY A2 TO
FF9E:	95 3D	1076	STA A1H,X	A1 AND A3
FFA0:	95 41	1077	STA A3H,X	
FFA2:	08	1078 NXTBSS2	INX	
FFA4:	F0 F3	1079	BEQ NXTBAS	
FFA5:	DU 00	1080	BNE NXTCCHR	
FFA7:	A2 00	1081 GETNUM	LDX #\$00	CLEAR A2
FFA9:	06 3E	1082	STX A2L	
FFAB:	06 3F	1083	STX A2H	
FFAD:	00 00 J2	1084 NXTCCHR	LDA IN,Y	GET CHAR
FFB0:	CB	1085	INY	
FFB1:	49 B0	1086	EOR #\$00	
FFB3:	C9 0A	1087	CMP #\$0A	
FFB5:	90 D3	1088	BCC DIG	IF HEX DIG, THEN
FFB7:	69 38	1089	ADC #\$08	
FFB9:	C9 FA	1090	CMP #\$FA	
FFD0:	B0 CC	1091	BCS DIG	
FFD1:	60	1092	RTS	
FFEE:	A9 FE	1093 TOSUE	LDA #\$00/256	PUSH HIGH-ORDER
FFFC:	48	1094	PHA	SUBR ADR ON SIK
FFC1:	B9 E3 FF	1095	LDA SUBTBL,Y	PUSH LOW ORDER
FFC4:	48	1096	PHA	SUBR AER ON STK
FFC5:	A5 31	1097	LDA MODE	
FFC7:	A0 00	1098 ZMODE	LDY #\$00	CLR MODE, OLD MODE
FFC9:	04 31	1099	STY MODE	TO A-REG
FFCB:	00	1100	RTS	GO TO SUGR VIA RTS
FFCC:	BC	1101 CHRTBL	DFB SBC	F("CTRL-C")
FFCD:	B2	1102	DFB \$B2	F("CTRL-Y")
FFCE:	B6	1103	DFB SBE	F("CTRL-E")
FFCF:	ED	1104	DFB SED	F("I")
FFD0:	EF	1105	DFB SEF	F("V")
FFD1:	C4	1106	DFB SC4	F("CTRL-K")
FFD2:	EC	1107	DFB SEC	F("S")
FFD3:	A9	1108	DFB SA9	F("CTRL-P")
FFD4:	BB	1109	DFB SBB	F("CTRL-B")
FFD5:	A6	1110	DFB SA6	F("-")
FFD6:	A4	1111	DFB SA4	F("+")
FFD7:	0B	1112	DFB S06	F("N") (F=EX-OR SB0+SB9)
FFD8:	95	1113	DFB S95	F("<")
FFD9:	07	1114	DFB S07	F("N")
FFDA:	02	1115	DFB S02	F("1")
FFDB:	05	1116	DFB S05	F("L")
FFDC:	F0	1117	DFB SFO	F("W")
FFDD:	00	1118	DFB S00	F("G")
FFDE:	EB	1119	DFB SEB	F("R")
FFDF:	93	1120	DFB S93	F(":")
FFE0:	A7	1121	DFB SA7	F(".")
FFE1:	C6	1122	DFB SC6	F("CR")
FFE2:	99	1123	DFB S99	F(BLANK)
FFE3:	B2	1124 SUBTBL	DFB #BASCONT-1	
FFE4:	C9	1125	DFB #USR-1	
FFE5:	BE	1126	DFB #REGZ-1	

FFE6:	C1	1127	DFB	#TRACE-1
FFE7:	35	1128	DFB	#VFY-1
FFE8:	8C	1129	DFB	#INPRTE-1
FFE9:	C3	1130	DFB	#STEP2-1
FFEA:	96	1131	DFB	#OUTPRT-1
FFEB:	AF	1132	DFB	#XBASIC-1
FFEC:	17	1133	DFB	#GETMODE-1
FFED:	17	1134	DFB	#SETMODE-1
FFEE:	2B	1135	DFB	#MOVE-1
FFEF:	1F	1136	DFB	#LT-1
FFF0:	63	1137	DFB	#SETNORM-1
FFF1:	7F	1138	DFB	#SETINV-1
FFF2:	5D	1139	DFB	#LIST-1
FFF3:	CC	1140	DFB	#WRITE-1
FFF4:	B5	1141	DFB	#GO-1
FFF5:	FC	1142	DFB	#READ-1
FFF6:	17	1143	DFB	#SETHODE-1
FFF7:	17	1144	DFB	#SETMODE-1
FFF8:	F5	1145	DFB	#CRMON-1
FFF9:	03	1146	DFB	#BLANK-1
FFFA:	FB	1147	DFB	#NMI NMI VECTOR
FFFB:	03	1148	DFB	#NMI/256
FFFC:	59	1149	DFB	#RESET RESET VECTOR
FFFD:	FF	1150	DFB	#RESET/256
FFFE:	86	1151	DFB	#IRQ IRQ VECTOR
FFFF:	FA	1152	DFB	#IRQ/256
		1153 KQTNZ	ECU	SJC

SYMBOL TABLE (NUMERICAL ORDER)

0000 LOCO	FC76 SCRL1	FB5B TABV
0022 WNDTOP	FC9E CLEOLZ	FB78 VIDWAIT
0026 GBASL	FCAA WAIT3	FB9B ESCNOW
002A BAS2L	FCC9 HEADR	FBD9 BELL1
002D V2	FCE5 WRTAPE	FBF4 ADVANCE
002E FORMAT	FCFD RDBIT	FC1A UP
0030 COLOR	FD2F ESC	FC2C ESC1
0034 YSAV	FD62 CANCEL	FC62 CR
0038 KSWL	0001 LOC1	FC8C SCRL2
003C A1L	0023 WNDBTM	FCA0 CLEOL2
0040 A3L	0027 GBASH	FCB4 NXTA4
0044 A5L	002B BAS2H	FCD6 WRBIT
0047 YREG	002D RMNEM	FCEC RDBYTE
004F RNDH	002F LASTIN	FDOC RDKEY
03F2 SOFTEV	0031 MODE	FD35 RDCHAR
03FB NMI	0035 YSAV1	FD67 GETLNZ
C000 IOADR	0039 KSWH	0020 WNDLFT
C030 SPKR	003D A1H	0024 CH
C053 MIXSET	0041 A3H	0028 BASL
C057 HIRES	0045 A5H	002C H2
C05B CLRAN1	0048 STATUS	002E MASK
C05F CLRAN3	0095 PICK	002F LENGTH
CFFF CLRROM	03F4 PWREDUP	0032 INVFLG
F80C RTMASK	03FE IRQLOC	0036 CSWL
F826 VLINEZ	C000 KBD	003A PCL
F836 CLRTOP	C050 TXTCLR	003E A2L
F856 GBCALC	C054 LOWSCR	0042 A4L
F87F RTMSKZ	C058 SETANO	0045 ACC
F8A5 ERR	C05C SETAN2	0049 SPNT
FBC9 MNNDX3	C060 TAPEIN	0200 IN
F8F5 NXTCOL	E000 BASIC	03F5 AMPERV
F926 PRADR3	F80E PLOT1	0400 LINE1
F940 PRNTYX	F828 VLINE	C010 KBDSTRB
F94A PRBL2	F838 CLRSC2	C051 TXTSET
F956 PCADJ3	F864 SETCOL	C055 HISCR
F9A6 FMT2	F882 INSDS1	C059 CLRAN0
FA00 MNEMR	FBA9 GETFMT	C05D CLRAN2
FA62 RESET	F8D0 INSTDSP	C064 PADD0
FAA3 NOFIX	F8F9 PRMN2	E003 BASIC2
FABA SLOOP	F92A PRADR4	F819 HLINE
FAE4 RDSP1	F941 PRNTAX	F831 RTS1
FB11 XLTBL	F94C PRBL3	F83C CLRSC3
FB2E RTS2D	F95C PCADJ4	F871 SCRН
FB4B SETWND	F9B4 CHAR1	F88C INSDS2
FB6F SETPWRC	FA40 IRQ	F8BE MNNDX1
FB97 ESCOLD	FA6F INITAN	F8D4 PRNTOP
FBD0 BASCLC2	FAA6 PWRUP	F910 PRADR1
FBFO STORADV	FAC7 NXTPYT	F930 PRADR5
FC10 BS	FAFD PWRCDN	F944 PRNTX
FC2B RTS4	FB19 RTBL	F953 PCADJ
FC58 HOME	FB2F INIT	F961 RTS2

F9BA	CHAR2	F914	PRAADR2	FDF0	COUT1
FA4C	BREAK	F93B	RELADR	FE0B	STOR
FAB1	NEWMON	F948	PRBLNK	FE20	LT
FAA9	SETPG3	F954	PCADJ2	FE5B	VFYOK
FAD7	REGDSP	F962	FMT1	FE78	A1PCLP
FB02	DISKID	F9C0	MNEML	FE86	SETIFLG
FB1E	PREAD	FA59	OLDBRK	FE93	SETVID
FB39	SETTXT	FA9B	FIXSEV	FEA7	IOPRT1
FB60	APPLEII	FAAB	SETPLP	FEB6	GO
FB88	KBDWAIT	FADA	RGDSP1	FECA	USR
FBA5	ESCNEW	FB09	TITLE	FEEF	WRBYT2
FBE4	BELL2	FB25	PREAD2	FF16	RD3
FBFC	RTS3	FB40	SETGR	FF44	RESTR1
FC22	VTAB	FB65	STITLE	FF65	MON
FC42	CLREOP	FB94	NOWAIT	FF8A	DIG
FC66	LF	FBC1	BASCALC	FFA7	GETNUM
FC95	SCRL3	FBEF	RTS2B	FFCC	CHRTBL
FCAB	WAIT	FBFD	VIDOUT	FDB4	ADDINP
FCBA	NXTA1	FC24	VTABZ	FDA3	XAMB
FCDB	ZERDLY	FC46	CLEOP1	FDC5	RTS4C
FCEE	RDBYT2	FC70	SCROLL	FDE3	PRHEX
FD1B	KEYIN	FC9C	CLREOL	FDF6	COUT2
FD3D	NOTCR	FCA9	WAIT2	FE17	RTS5
FD6A	GETLN	FCCB	RTS4B	FE22	LT2
0021	WNDWDTH	FCE2	ONEDLY	FE5E	LIST
0025	CV	FCFA	RD2BIT	FE7F	A1PCRTS
0029	BASH	FD21	KEYIN2	FE89	SETKBD
002C	LMNEM	FD5F	NOTCR1	FE95	OUTPORT
002E	CHKSUM	FD71	BCKSPC	FEA9	IOPRT2
002F	SIGN	FD75	NXTCHAR	FEBF	REQZ
0033	PROMPT	FD92	PRA1	FECD	WRITE
0037	CSWH	FDB3	XAM	FEF6	CRMON
0038	PCH	FDD1	ADD	FF2D	PRERR
003F	A2H	FDED	COUT	FF4A	SAVE
0043	A4H	FE04	BLANK	FF69	MONZ
0046	XREG	FE1D	SETMDZ	FF90	NXTBIT
004E	RNDL	FE36	VFY	FFAD	NXTCHR
03F0	BRKV	FE75	A1PC	FFE3	SUBTBL
03F8	USRADR	FE84	SETNORM	FD8E	CROUT
07F8	MSLOT	FE8D	INPRT	FDAD	MODBCHK
C020	TAPEOUT	FE9B	IOPRT	FDC6	XAMP
C052	MIXCLR	FEB3	BASCONT	FDE5	PRHEXZ
C056	LORES	FEC4	STEPZ	FE00	BL1
C05A	SETAN1	FEED	WRBYTE	FE1B	SETMODE
C05E	SETAN3	FF0A	RD2	FE2C	MOVE
C070	PTRIG	FF3F	RESTORE	FE63	LIST2
F800	PLDT	FF59	OLDRST	FE80	SETINV
F81C	HLINE1	FF7A	CHRSGRH	FE8B	INPORT
F832	CLRSR	FFA2	NXTBS2	FE97	OUTPRT
F847	GBASCALC	FFC7	ZMODE	FEBO	XBASIC
F879	SCRN2	FD7E	CAPTST	FEC2	TRACE
F89B	IEVEN	FD96	PRYX2	FED4	WR1
F8C2	MNNDX2	FDB6	DATADUT	FEFD	READ
FBDB	PRNTBL	FDDA	PRBYTE	FF3A	BELL

FF4C SAV1
FF73 NXTITM
FF98 NXTBAS
FFBE TOSUB

SYMBOL TABLE (ALPHABETICAL ORDER)

003D A1H	F956 PCADJ3	FEA7 IOPRT1
FE7F A1PCRTS	0095 PICK	FA40 IRQ
0040 A3L	F910 PRADR1	FD1B KEYIN
0044 A5L	F930 PRADRS	002F LASTIN
F8F4 ADVANCE	FDDA PRBYTE	FE5E LIST
002A BAS2L	FDE3 PRHEX	0001 LOC1
0029 BASH	F8DB PRNTBL	FE20 LT
FD71 BCKSPC	0033 PROMPT	F9C0 MNEML
FE00 BL1	03F4 PWREDUP	F8C9 MNNDX3
FC10 BS	FF16 RD3	FF65 MON
F98A CHAR2	FD35 RDCHAR	03FB NMI
0024 CH	FAD7 REGDSP	FB94 NOWAIT
C059 CLRANO	FF3F RESTORE	FF90 NXTBIT
FC9C CLREOL	004F RNDH	FFAD NXTCHR
F83C CLRSC3	F87F RTMSKZ	FF59 DLDRST
FDED COUT	F961 RTS2	C064 PADDL0
FC62 CR	003C A1L	F95C PCADJ4
0025 CV	003F A2H	F80E PLOT1
F8A5 ERR	0043 A4H	F914 PRADR2
FB97 ESCOLD	0045 ACC	F94A PRBL2
F9A6 FMT2	03F5 AMPERV	FB1E PREAD
0026 GBASL	FBC1 BASCALC	FDE5 PRHEXZ
FD6A GETLN	E000 BASIC	FBD4 PRNTCP
FCC9 HEADR	FBD9 BELL1	FD96 PRYX2
FB19 HLINE	FE04 BLANK	FAA6 PWRUP
0200 IN	FD62 CANCEL	FCFD RDBIT
F8B2 INSDS1	002E CHKSUM	FDOC RDKEY
C000 IOADR	FCA0 CLEOL2	FEFB REGZ
03FE IRGLOC	C05B CLRAN1	FF44 RESTR1
C000 KBD	FC42 CLREOP	004E RNDL
0038 KSWL	F832 CLRSCR	F831 RTS1
0400 LINE1	FDF0 COUT1	FBFC RTS3
0000 LOCO	FEF6 CRMON	FE78 A1PCLP
FE22 LT2	FDB6 DATAOUT	003E A2L
C053 MIXSET	FC2C ESC1	0042 A4L
F8C2 MNNDX2	FD2F ESC	FD84 ADDINP
FF69 MONZ	002E FORMAT	FB60 APPLEII
FAB1 NEWMON	F856 GBCALC	FB00 BASCLC2
FD5F NOTCR1	FFA7 GETNUM	E003 BASIC2
FF98 NXTBAS	C057 HIRES	FBE4 BELL2
FD75 NXTCHAR	FC58 HOME	FA4C BREAK
FA59 DLDBRK	FB2F INIT	FD7E CAPTST
FE97 OUTPRT	F88C INSDS2	FF7A CHRSRCH

FC9E CLEOLZ	FF3A BELL	C05C SETAN2
C05D CLRAN2	03F0 BRKV	FE86 SETIFLG
CFFF CLRROM	F9B4 CHAR1	FE18 SETMODE
FB36 CLRTOP	FFCC CHRTBL	FB6F SETPWRC
FDF6 COUTZ	FC46 CLEOP1	002F SIGN
0037 CSWH	C05F CLRANG	0049 SPNT
FF8A DIG	F838 CLRSC2	FE0B STDR
FBA5 ESCNEW	0030 COLOR	C060 TAPEIN
FA9B FIXSEV	FD8E CROUT	FEC2 TRACE
FB47 GBASCALC	0036 CSWL	FECA USR
FBA9 GETFMT	FB02 DISKID	FE5B VFYOK
FEB6 GO	FB9B ESCNOW	FB2B VLINE
C055 HISCR	F962 FMT1	FCAB WAIT
F89B IEVEN	0027 GBASH	0022 WNDTOP
FE8B IMPORT	FD67 GETLNZ	FEEF WRBYT2
F8D0 INSTDSP	002C H2	FDA3 XAMB
FEA9 IOPRT2	FB1C HLINE1	FB11 XLTBL
C010 KBDSTRB	FA6F INITAN	0034 YSAV
FD21 KEYIN2	FE8D INPRT	FC8C SCRL2
002F LENGTH	0032 INVFLG	FC70 SCROLL
FE63 LIST2	FE9B IOPRT	C05E SETAN3
C056 LORES	FB88 KBDWAIT	FE80 SETINV
002E MASK	0039 KSWH	FE84 SETNORM
FA00 MNEMR	FC66 LF	FB39 SETTXT
FDAD MOD8CHK	002C LMNEM	FABA SLOOP
FE2C MOVE	C054 LOWSCR	004B STATUS
FAA3 NOFIX	C052 MIXCLR	FBF0 STORADV
FCBA NXTA1	FB8E MNNDX1	C020 TAPEOUT
FFA2 NXTBS2	0031 MODE	C050 TXTCLR
FBF5 NXTCOL	07FB MSLOT	03FB USRADR
FCE2 ONEDLY	FD3D NOTCR	FBFD VIDOUT
F954 PCADJ2	FCB4 NXTA4	FC24 VTABZ
003B PCH	FAC7 NXTBYT	FCAA WAIT3
F800 PLOT	FF73 NXTITM	0021 WNDWDTH
F926 PRADR3	FE95 OUTPORT	FEED WRBYTE
F94C PRBL3	F953 PCADJ	FDC6 XAMPM
FB25 PREAD2	003A PCL	0046 XREG
F8F9 PRMN2	FD92 PRA1	FCDB ZERDLY
F944 PRNTX	F92A PRADR4	FF4C SAV1
C070 PTRIG	F948 PRBLNK	FC95 SCRL3
FCFA RD2BIT	FF2D PRERR	C05B SETANO
FCEE RDBYT2	F941 PRNTAX	FB64 SETCOL
FAE4 RDSP1	F940 PRNTYX	FE89 SETKBD
F938 RELADR	FAFD PWRCON	FAA9 SETPG3
FADA RGDSP1	FF0A RD2	FE93 SETVID
FB19 RTBL	FCEC RDBYTE	03F2 SOFTEV
FBEF RTS2B	FEFD READ	FEC4 STEPZ
FCCB RTS4B	FA62 RESET	FFE3 SUBTBL
FE75 A1PC	002D RMNEM	FB09 TITLE
0041 A3H	FB0C RTMASK	C051 TX1SET
0045 A5H	FB2E RTS2D	002D V2
FDD1 ADD	FDC5 RTS4C	FB78 VIDWAIT
002B BAS2H	FE17 RTS5	FC22 VTAB
FEB3 BASCONT	FC2B RTS4	0023 WNDBTM
0028 BASL	FC76 SCRL1	FED4 WR1
	F879 SCRNL2	

FECD WRITE
FDB3 XAM
0047 YREG
FFC7 ZMODE
FF4A SAVE
F871 SCRN
C05A SETANI
FB40 SETGR
FE1D SETMDZ
FAAB SETPLP
FB4B SETWND
C030 SPKR
FB65 STITLE
FB5B TABV
FFBE TOSUB
FC1A UP
FE36 VFY
F826 VLINEZ
FCA9 WAIT2
0020 WNDLFT
FCD6 WRBIT
FCE5 WRTAPE
FEBO XBASIC
0035 YSAV1

SYMBOL TABLE SIZE
2589 BYTES USED
2531 BYTES REMAINING

SLIST 4A

GLOSSARY

6502: The manufacturer's name for the microprocessor at the heart of your Apple.

Address: As a noun: the particular number associated with each memory location. On the Apple, an address is a number between \emptyset and 65535 (or \$0000 and \$FFFF hexadecimal). As a verb: to refer to a particular memory location.

Address Bus: The set of wires, or the signal on those wires, which carry the binary-encoded address from the microprocessor to the rest of the computer.

Addressing mode: The Apple's 6502 microprocessor has thirteen distinct ways of referring to most locations in memory. These thirteen methods of forming addresses are called **addressing modes**.

Analog: Analog measurements, as opposed to digital measurements, use an continuously variable physical quantity (such as length, voltage, or resistance) to represent values. Digital measurements use precise, limited quantities (such as presence or absence of voltages or magnetic fields) to represent values.

AND: A binary function which is "on" if and only if all of its inputs are "on".

Apple: 1. The round fleshy fruit of a Rosaceous tree (*Pyrus Malus*). 2. A brand of personal computer. 3) Apple Computer, Inc., manufacturer of home and personal computers.

ASCII: An acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (often called "USASCII" or misinterpreted as "ASC-II"). This standard *code* assigns a unique value from \emptyset to 127 to each of 128 numbers, letters, special characters, and control characters.

Assembler: 1) One who assembles electronic or mechanical equipment. 2) A program which converts the *mnemonics* and *symbols* of assembly language into the *opcodes* and *operands* of machine language.

Assembly language: A language similar in structure to machine language, but made up of *mnemonics* and *symbols*. Programs written in assembly language are slightly less difficult to write and understand than programs in machine language.

BASIC: Acronym for "Beginner's All-Purpose Symbolic Instruction Code". BASIC is a *higher-level language*, similar in structure to FORTRAN but somewhat easier to learn. It was invented by Kemeny and Kurtz at Dartmouth College in 1963 and has proved to be the most popular language for personal computers.

Binary: A number system with two digits, "0" and "1", with each digit in a binary number representing a power of two. Most digital computers are binary, deep down inside. A binary signal is easily expressed by the presence or absence of something, such as an electrical potential or a magnetic field.

Binary Function: An operation performed by an electronic circuit which has one or more inputs and only one output. All inputs and outputs are binary signals. See *AND OR*, and *Exclusive-OR*.

Bit: A *Binary digit*. The smallest amount of information which a computer can hold. A single bit specifies a single value: "0" or "1". Bits can be grouped to form larger values (see *Byte* and *Nibble*).

Board: See *Printed Circuit Board*.

Bootstrap ("boot"): To get a system running from a *cold-start*. The name comes from the machine's attempts to "pull itself off the ground" by tugging on its own bootstraps."

Buffer: A device or area of memory which is used to hold something temporarily. The "picture buffer" contains graphic information to be displayed on the video screen; the "input buffer" holds a partially formed input line.

Bug: An error. A *hardware bug* is a physical or electrical malfunction or design error. A *software bug* is an error in programming, either in the logic of the program or typographical in nature. See "feature".

Bus: A set of wires or *traces* in a computer which carry a related set of data from one place to another, or the data which is on such a bus.

Byte: A basic unit of measure of a computer's memory. A byte usually comprises eight *bits*. Thus, it can have a value from 0 to 255. Each character in the *ASCII* can be represented in one byte. The Apple's memory locations are all one byte, and the Apple's addresses of these locations consist of two bytes.

Call: As a verb: to leave the program or subroutine which is currently executing and to begin another, usually with the intent to return to the original program or subroutine. As a noun: an instruction which calls a subroutine.

Character: Any *graphic symbol* which has a specific meaning to people. Letters (both upper- and lower-case), numbers, and various symbols (such as punctuation marks) are all characters.

Chip: See *Integrated Circuit*.

Code: A method of representing something in terms of something else. The *ASCII* code represents characters as binary numbers, the *BASIC* language represents algorithms in terms of program statements. **Code** is also used to refer to programs, usually in *low-level languages*.

Cold-start: To begin to operate a computer which has just been turned on.

Color burst: A signal which color television sets recognize and convert to the colored dots you see on a color TV screen. Without the color burst signal, all pictures would be black-and-white.

Computer: Any device which can receive and store a set of *instructions*, and then act upon those instructions in a predetermined and predictable fashion. The definition implies that both the instruction and the *data* upon which the instructions act can be changed. A device whose instructions cannot be changed is not a computer.

Control (CTRL) character: Characters in the *ASCII* character set which usually have no graphic representation, but are used to control various functions. For example, the RETURN control character is a signal to the Apple that you have finished typing an *input line* and you wish the computer to act upon it.

CRT: Acronym for "Cathode-Ray Tube", meaning any television screen, or a device containing such a screen.

Cursor: A special symbol which reminds you of a certain position on something. The cursor on a slide rule lets you line up numbers; the cursor on the Apple's screen reminds you of where you are when you are typing.

Data (datum): Information of any type.

Debug: To find *bugs* and eliminate them.

DIP: Acronym for "Dual In-line Package", the most common container for an Integrated Circuit. DIPs have two parallel rows of *pins*, spaced on one-tenth of an inch centers. DIPs usually come in 14-, 16-, 18-, 20-, 24-, and 40-pin configurations.

Disassembler: A program which converts the *opcodes* of *machine language* to the *mnemonics* of *assembly language*. The opposite of an *assembler*.

Display: As a noun: any sort of output device for a computer, usually a *video screen*. As a noun: to place information on such a screen.

Edge connector: A socket which mates with the edge of a *printed circuit board* in order to exchange electrical signals.

Entry point: The location used by a machine-language subroutine which contains the first executable instruction in that subroutine; consequently, often the *beginning* of the subroutine.

Exclusive-OR: A binary function whose value is "off" only if all of its inputs are "off", or all of its inputs are "on".

Execute: To perform the intention of a command or instruction. Also, to run a program or a portion of a program.

Feature: A *bug* as described by the marketing department.

Format: As a noun: the physical form in which something appears. As a verb: to specify such a form.

Graphic: Visible as a distinct, recognizable shape or color.

Graphics: A system to display graphic items or a collection of such items.

Hardware: The physical parts of a computer.

Hexadecimal: A number system which uses the ten digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F to represent values in base 16. Each hexadecimal digit in a hexadecimal number represents a power of 16. In this manual, all hexadecimal numbers are preceded by a dollar sign (\$).

High-level Language: A *language* which is more intelligible to humans than it is to machines.

High-order: The most important, or item with the highest value, of a set of similar items. The high-order bit of a byte is that which has the highest place value.

High part: The *high-order* byte of a two-byte address. In decimal, the high part of an address is the quotient of the address divided by 256. In the 6502, as in many other microprocessors, the high part of an address comes last when that address is stored in memory.

Hz (Hertz): Cycles per second. A bicycle wheel which makes two revolutions in one second is running at 2Hz. The Apple's microprocessor runs at 1,023,000Hz.

I/O: See *Input/Output*.

IC: See *Integrated Circuit*.

Input: As a noun: data which flows from the outside world into the computer. As a verb: to obtain data from the outside world.

Input/Output (I/O): The software or hardware which exchanges data with the outside world.

Instruction: The smallest portion of a program that a computer can execute. In 6502 machine language, an instruction comprises one, two, or three bytes; in a higher-level language, instructions may be many characters long.

Integrated circuit: A small (less than the size of a fingernail and about as thin) wafer of a glassy material (usually silicon) into which has been etched an electronic circuit. A single IC can contain from ten to ten thousand discrete electronic components. ICs are usually housed in DIPs (see above), and the term IC is sometimes used to refer to both the circuit and its package.

Interface: An exchange of information between one thing and another, or the mechanisms which make such an exchange possible.

Interpreter: A program, usually written in machine language, which understands and executes a higher-level language.

Interrupt: A physical effect which causes the computer to jump to a special interrupt-handling subroutine. When the interrupt has been taken care of, the computer resumes execution of the interrupted program with no noticeable change. Interrupts are used to signal the computer that a particular device wants attention.

K: Stands for the greek prefix "Kilo", meaning one thousand. In common computer-related usage, "K" usually represents the quantity 2^{10} , or 1024 (hexadecimal \$400).

Kilobyte: 1,024 bytes.

Language: A computer language is a code which (hopefully!) both a programmer and his computer understand. The programmer expresses what he wants to do in this code, and the computer understands the code and performs the desired actions.

Line: On a video screen, a "line" is a horizontal sequence of graphic symbols extending from one edge of the screen to the other. To the Apple, an *input line* is a sequence of up to 254 characters, terminated by the control character RETURN. In most places which do not have personal computers, a line is something you wait in to use the computer.

Low-level Language: A language which is more intelligible to machines than it is to humans.

Low-order: The least important, or item with the least value, of a set of items. The low-order bit in a byte is the bit with the least place value.

Low part: The *low-order* byte of a two-byte address. In decimal, the low part of an address is the remainder of the address divided by 256, also called the "address modulo 256." In the 6502, as in many other microprocessors, the low part of an address comes first when that address is stored in memory.

Machine language: The lowest level language which a computer understands. Machine

languages are usually binary in nature. Instructions in machine language are single-byte *opcodes* sometimes followed by various *operands*.

Memory address: A memory address is a two-byte value which selects a single memory location out of the *memory map*. Memory addresses in the Apple are stored with their low-order bytes first, followed by their high-order bytes.

Memory location: The smallest subdivision of the memory map to which the computer can refer. Each memory location has associated with it a unique *address* and a certain *value*. Memory locations on the Apple comprise one byte each.

Memory Map: This term is used to refer to the set of all memory locations which the microprocessor can address directly. It is also used to describe a graphic representation of a system's memory.

Microcomputer: A term used to described a computer which is based upon a microprocessor.

Micropocessor: An integrated circuit which understands and executes machine language programs.

Mnemonic: An acronym (or any other symbol) used in the place of something more difficult to remember. In *Assembly Language*, each machine language opcode is given a three letter mnemonic (for example, the opcode \$60 is given the mnemonic RTS, meaning "ReTurn from Subroutine").

Mode: A condition or set of conditions under which a certain set of rules apply.

Modulo: An arithmetic function with two operands. *Modulo* takes the first operand, divides it by the second, and returns the remainder of the division.

Monitor: 1) A closed-circuit television receiver. 2) A program which allows you to use your computer at a very low level, often with the values and addresses of individual memory locations.

Multiplexer: An electronic circuit which has many data inputs, a few selector inputs, and one output. A multiplexer connects one of its many data inputs to its output. The data input it chooses to connect to the output is determined by the selector inputs.

Mux: See *Multiplexer*.

Nibble: Colloquial term for half of a byte, or four bits.

Opcode: A machine language instruction, numerical (often binary) in nature.

OR: A binary function whose value is "on" if at least one of its inputs are "on".

Output: As a noun, data generated by the computer whose destination is the real world. As a verb, the process of generating or transmitting such data.

Page: 1) A screenfull of information on a video display. 2) A quantity of memory locations, addressible with one byte. On the Apple, a "page" of memory contains 256 locations.

Pascal: A noted French scientist.

PC board: See *Printed Circuit Board*.

Peripheral: Something attached to the computer which is not part of the computer itself. Most peripherals are input and/or output devices.

Personal Computer: A computer with *memory*, *languages*, and *peripherals* which are well-suited for use in a home, office, or school.

Pinout: A description of the function of each pin on an IC, often presented in the form of a diagram.

Potentiometer: An electronic component whose resistance to the flow of electrons is proportional to the setting of a dial or knob. Also known as a "pot" or "variable resistor".

Printed Circuit Board: A sheet of fiberglass or epoxy onto which a thin layer of metal has been applied, then etched away to form *traces*. Electronic components can then be attached to the board with molten solder, and they can exchange electronic signals via the etched traces on the board. Small printed circuit boards are often called "cards", especially if they are meant to connect with *edge connectors*.

Program: A sequence of instructions which describes a process.

PROM: Acronym for "*Programmable Read-Only Memory*". A PROM is a ROM whose contents can be altered by electrical means. Information in PROMs does not disappear when the power is turned off. Some PROMs can be erased by ultraviolet light and be reprogrammed.

RAM: See *Random-Access Memory*.

Random-Access Memory (RAM): This is the *main memory* of a computer. The acronym RAM can be used to refer either to the integrated circuits which make up this type of memory or the memory itself. The computer can store values in distinct locations in RAM and recall them again, or alter and re-store them if it wishes. On the Apple, as with most small computers, the values which are in RAM memory are lost when the power to the computer is turned off.

Read-Only Memory (ROM): This type of memory is usually used to hold important programs or data which must be available to the computer when the power is first turned on. Information in ROMs is placed there in the process of manufacturing the ROMs and is unalterable. Information stored in ROMs does not disappear when the power is turned off.

Reference: 1) A source of information, such as this manual. 2) As a verb, the action of examining or altering the contents of a memory location. As a noun, such an action.

Return: To exit a subroutine and go back to the program which called it.

ROM: See *Read-Only Memory*.

Run: To follow the sequence of instructions which comprise a program, and to complete the process outlined by the instructions.

Scan line: A single sweep of a cathode beam across the face of a *cathode-ray tube*.

Schematic: A diagram which represents the electrical interconnections and circuitry of an electronic device.

Scroll: To move all the text on a display (usually upwards) to make room for more (usually at the bottom).

Soft switch: A two-position switch which can be "thrown" either way by the software of a computer.

Software: The *programs* which give the hardware something to do.

Stack: A reserved area in memory which can be used to store information temporarily. The information in a stack is referenced not by address, but in the order in which it was placed on the stack. The last datum which was "pushed" onto the stack will be the first one to be "popped" off it.

Strobe: A momentary signal which indicates the occurrence of a specific event.

Subroutine: A segment of a program which can be executed by a single *call*. Subroutines are used to perform the same sequence of instructions at many different places in one program.

Syntax: The structure of instructions in a given *language*. If you make a mistake in entering an instruction and garble the syntax, the computer sometimes calls this a "SYNTAX ERROR."

Text: Characters, usually letters and numbers. "Text" usually refers to large chunks of English, rather than computer, language.

Toggle switch: A two-position switch which can only flip from one position to the other and back again, and cannot be directly set either way.

Trace: An etched conductive path on a *Printed-Circuit Board* which serves to electronically connect components.

Video: 1) Anything visual. 2) Information presented on the face of a *cathode-ray tube*.

Warm-start: To restart the operation of a computer after you have lost control of its language or operating system.

Window: Something out of which you jump when the power fails and you lose a large program. Really: a reserved area on a *display* which is dedicated to some special purpose.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Here are some other publications which you might enjoy:

Synertek/MOS Technology 6500 Programming Manual

This manual is an introduction to machine language programming for the MC6502 microprocessor. It describes the machine language operation of the Apple's microprocessor in meticulous detail. However, it contains no specific information about the Apple.

This book is available from Apple. Order part number A2L0003.

Synertek/MOS Technology 6500 Hardware Manual

This manual contains a detailed description of the internal operations of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor. It also has much information regarding interfacing the microprocessor to external devices, some of which is pertinent to the Apple.

This book is also available from Apple. Order part number A2L0002.

The Apple II Monitor Peeled

This book contains a thorough, well-done description of the operating subroutines within the Apple's original Monitor ROM.

This is available from the author:

William E. Dougherty
14349 San Jose Street
Los Angeles, CA 91345

Programming the 6502

This book, written by Rodnay Zaks, is an excellent tutorial manual on machine and assembly-language programming for the Apple's 6502 microprocessor.

This manual is available from Sybex Incorporated, 2020 Milvia, Berkeley, CA 94704. It should also be available at your local computer retailer or bookstore. Order book number C202.

6502 Applications

This book, also written by Rodnay Zaks, describes many applications of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor.

This is also available from Sybex. Order book number D302.

System Description: The Apple II

Written by Steve Wozniak, the designer of the Apple computers, this article describes the basic construction and operation of the Apple II.

This article was originally published in the May, 1977 issue of BYTE magazine, and is available from BYTE Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH 30458.

SWEET16: The 6502 Dream Machine

Also written by Steve Wozniak, this article describes the SWEET16® interpretive machine language enclosed in the Apple's Integer BASIC ROMs.

This article appeared in the October, 1977 issue of BYTE magazine, and is available from BYTE Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH 30458.

More Colors for your Apple

This article, written by Allen Watson III, describes in detail the Apple High-Resolution Graphics mode. Also included is a reply by Steve Wozniak, the designer of the Apple, describing a modification you can make to update your Revision 0 Apple to add the two extra colors available on the Revision 1 board.

This article appeared in the June, 1979 issue of BYTE magazine, and is available from BYTE Publications, Inc. Peterborough, NH 30458.

Call APPLE (Apple Puget Sound Program Library Exchange)

This is one of the largest Apple user group newsletters. For information, write:

Apple Puget Sound Program Library Exchange
6708 39th Ave. Southwest
Seattle, Wash., 98136

The Cider Press

This is another large club newsletter. For information, write:

The Cider Press
c/o The Apple Core of San Francisco
Box 4816
San Francisco, CA 94101



INDEX

- 190 GENERAL INDEX
- 194 INDEX OF FIGURES
- 195 INDEX OF PHOTOS
- 195 INDEX OF TABLES
- 195 CAST OF CHARACTERS

GENERAL INDEX

Ø boards, Revision	3, 26
1 board, Revision	3, 26
2716 type PROMs	94
50Hz modification, Eurapple	10
6502 instruction set	Appendix A
6502 internal registers	53, 81
6502 microprocessor	3, 88

-- A --

Access Memory (RAM), Random	3
address and data buses	88, 90
address multiplexer, RAM	96
addresses and data	40
addressing modes	66
analog inputs	24
annunciator outputs	23, 36, 100
annunciator special locations	24
Apple Firmware card	73
Apple Language card	3
Apple main board, the	3, 89
Apple Mini-assembler	49
Apple, photo of the	2
Apple power supply, the	2, 92
Apple, setting up the	2
Apples, varieties of	25
ASCII character code	5, 6, 7, 8, 15
ASCII codes, keys and	7
Autostart ROM listing	Appendix C
Autostart ROM Reset	36
Autostart ROM special locations	37
Autostart ROM	25
auxiliary video connector	9

-- B --

backspace character	30
backspace key	34
BASIC, entering	34, 54
BASIC, reentering	34, 54
bell character	31
block pinout, configuration	71
blocks, RAM configuration	70
board I/O, peripheral	79
board, Revision Ø	3, 26
board, Revision 1	3, 26
board, the Apple main	3, 89
board schematic, main	110
buffer, picture	12
buffer, input	33
built-in I/O	78, 98

buses, address and data	88, 90
byte, power-up	37, 65

-- C --

card, Apple Language	3
card, Apple Firmware	73
cassette interface jacks	22, 103
cassette interface	22
cassette tape, saving to	46
cassette tape, reading from	47
changing memory	43
character code, ASCII	5, 6, 7, 8, 15
character, backspace	30
character, line-feed	30
character, RETURN	30
character, bell	31
characters, prompting	33
characters, keyboard	7, 8
characters, control	7
clearing the keyboard strobe	6
code, ASCII character	5, 6, 7, 8, 15
codes, escape	34
codes, keys and ASCII	7
cold start	36
colors, Low-Res	11, 17
colors, High-Res	11, 19, 26
colors, European High-Res	20
command loops, Monitor	56
commands, creating your own	57
commands, summary of Monitor	59
comparing memory	46
configuration block pinout	71
configuration blocks, RAM	70
configuration, RAM memory	70
connector pinout, peripheral	106
connector, keyboard	5, 102
connector, power	104
connector, speaker	105
connector, Game I/O	23, 100
connector, auxiliary video	9
connector, video	9
connectors, peripheral	3, 105
connector pinouts, keyboard	103
control characters	7
control values, Normal/Inverse	32
Controllers, Game	24, 100
COUT, KEYIN switches	83
COUT standard output subroutine	30
creating your own commands	57
CSW/KSW switches	83

cursor	30
cursor, output	30
cycle, the RESET	36
 -- D --	
data buses, address and	90
data, addresses and	40
debugging programs	51
display special locations, video	13
display, video	9
 -- E --	
editing an input line	33
editing features	25
entering BASIC	34, 54
entering the Monitor	40
entry vector, soft	37
escape (ESC) codes	34
Eurapple 50Hz modification	10
European High-Res colors	20
examining memory	41
expansion ROM	84
 -- F --	
feature, the Stop-List	26, 30
features, input/output	20
features, editing	25
features, keyboard	5
features, microprocessor	88
features, power supply	92
Firmware card, Apple	73
("flag") inputs, one-bit	24, 78
format, Text screen	16
format, Low-Res screen	18
format, High-Res screen	21
from cassette tape, reading	47
 -- G --	
Game Controllers	24
Game I/O connector	23, 100
generator, the video	96
GETLN and input lines	33
graphics modes	11
graphics, High-Res	19
graphics, Low-Res	17
 -- H --	
hexadecimal notation	40
High-Res colors, European	20
High-Res graphics	19
High-Res screen, the	21
High-Res video mode, the	19
High-Res colors	19, 26
 -- I --	
input buffer	33
input line, editing an	33
input lines, GETLN and	33
input prompting	32
input subroutine, RDKEY standard	32
input/output features	20
input/output special locations	25
input/output	78
inputs, data	78
inputs, one-bit ("flag")	24, 78
inputs, analog	24
inputs, single-bit pushbutton	78
instruction set, 6502	Appendix A
instructions, Mini-Assembler	66
interface jacks, cassette	22, 103
interface, cassette	22
internal registers, 6502	53, 81
interrupts	65, 107, 108
inverse text mode	32, 54
I/O connector, Game	23, 100
I/O programming suggestions	80
I/O special locations	79
I/O, built-in	78, 98
I/O, peripheral board	79
I/O, peripheral slot	79
 -- J --	
jacks, cassette interface	22, 103
jacks, video output	97
jumper, "USER 1"	99
 -- K --	
key, backspace	34
key, retype	34
keyboard characters	7, 8
keyboard connector	5, 102
keyboard connector pinouts	103
keyboard features	5
keyboard schematic	101
keyboard special locations	6
keyboard strobe	6, 78, 79, 98, 102
keyboard strobe, clearing the	6
keyboard, review of the	4, 100
keyboard, reading the	6
KEYIN switches, COUT	83

keys and ASCII codes	7
----------------------	---

-- L --

Language card, Apple	3, 69
leaving the Mini-Assembler	50
line, editing an input	33
line-feed character	30
lines, GETLN and input	33
listing, Autostart ROM	Appendix C
listing, Monitor ROM	Appendix C
listing machine language programs	49
list of special locations	Appendix B
locations, list of special	Appendix B
locations, annunciator special	24
locations, video display special	13
locations, input/output special	25
locations, text window special	31
locations, Autostart ROM special	37
locations, Monitor special	65
locations, keyboard special	6
locations, I/O special	79
loops, Monitor command	56
Low-Res colors	17
Low-Res screen, the	18
Low-Res video mode, the	17
lukewarm start	36

-- M --

machine language programs, listing	49
main board, the Apple	3, 89
main board schematic	110
map, system memory	68
maps, zero page memory	74
Memory (RAM), Random Access	3
Memory (ROM), Read-Only	3
memory configuration, RAM	70
memory map, system	68
memory maps, zero page	74
memory pages	68
memory, examining	41
memory, changing	43
memory, moving	44
memory, comparing	46
memory, RAM	68, 95
memory, ROM	72, 94
microprocessor features	88
microprocessor, 6502	3, 88
Mini-Assembler instructions	66
Mini-Assembler prompt (!)	50
Mini-Assembler, Apple	49
Mini-Assembler, leaving the	50
mode, the text video	14

mode, the Low-Res video	17
mode, the High-Res video	19
mode, inverse text	32
mode, normal text	32
modes, addressing	66
modes, graphics	11
modification, Eurapple 50Hz	10
Monitor command loops	56
Monitor commands, summary of	59
Monitor prompt (+)	40
Monitor ROM RESET	38
Monitor ROM listing	Appendix C
Monitor ROM	25
Monitor special locations	65
Monitor subroutines, some useful	61
Monitor, entering the	40
moving memory	44
multiplexer, RAM address	96

-- N --

normal text mode	32
Normal/Inverse control values	32
notation, hexadecimal	40
number, random	33

-- O --

one (system stack), page	69
one-bit ("flag") inputs	24, 25, 78
output cursor	30
output jacks, video	97
output subroutine, COUT standard	30
output, utility strobe	25
outputs, annunciator	23
outputs, strobe	78
own commands, creating your	57

-- P --

page memory maps, zero	74
page one (system stack)	69
page zero	69, 74
pages, screen	12
pages, memory	68
peripheral board I/O	79
peripheral connector pinout	106
peripheral connectors	3, 105
peripheral slot I/O	79
peripheral slot RAM	82
peripheral slot ROM	80
photo of the Apple	2
picture buffer	12
pinout, peripheral connector	106

pinout, configuration block.....	71
pinout, ROM.....	95
pinout, RAM.....	96
pinouts, keyboard connector.....	103
power connector	104
power supply features	92
power supply schematic	93
power supply, the Apple	2, 28, 92
power-up byte	37, 65
programming suggestions, I/O	80
programs, running machine language	48
programs, listing machine language	48
programs, debugging	51
PROM, peripheral card.....	80
PROM, expansion ROM or	84
PROMs, 2716 type	94
prompt (+), Monitor	40
prompt (!), Mini-Assembler	50
prompting characters	33
prompting, input	32
pushbutton inputs, single-bit.....	78
 -- R --	
RAM address multiplexer	96
RAM configuration blocks.....	70
RAM memory configuration	70
RAM memory	68, 95
RAM pinout	96
RAM, peripheral slot.....	82
random access memory (RAM)	3
random number	33
RDKEY standard input subroutine	32
reading from cassette tape	47
reading the keyboard	6
read-only memory (ROM)	3
reentering BASIC	34, 54
registers, 6502 internal	53, 81
relationships, timing signals and	91
RESET cycle, the	36
RESET, Autostart ROM	36
RESET, Monitor ROM	38
return character	30
retype key	34
review of the keyboard	4, 100
Revision 0 boards	3, 26
Revision 1 board	26
ROM listing, Autostart	Appendix C
ROM listing, Monitor	Appendix C
ROM memory	72, 94
ROM pinout	95
ROM RESET, Autostart	36
ROM RESET, Monitor	38
ROM special locations, Autostart	37
 -- S --	
saving to cassette tape	46
schematic, keyboard	101
schematic, power supply	93
schematic, main board	110
screen format	11
screen format, Text	16
screen format, High-Res	21
screen format, Low-Res	18
screen pages	12
screen soft switches	12
screen, the text	16
screen, the Low-Res	18
screen, the High-Res	21
set, 6502 instruction	Appendix A
setting up the Apple	2
signals and relationships, timing	91
single-bit pushbutton inputs	78
slot I/O, peripheral	79
slot RAM, peripheral	82
slot ROM, peripheral	80
soft entry vector	37
soft switches	12, 79, 98
soft switches, screen	12
speaker connector	105
special locations, list of	Appendix B
special locations, video display	13
special locations, input/output	25
special locations, text window	31
special locations, Autostart ROM	37
special locations, Monitor	65
special locations, keyboard	6
special locations, I/O	79
stack), page one (system	69
standard input subroutine, RDKEY	32
standard output subroutine, COUT	30
start, cold	36
start, lukewarm	36
start, warm	36
STEP and TRACE	26, 51
Stop-List feature, the	26, 30
strobe output, utility	25
strobe outputs	78
strobe, clearing the keyboard	6
subroutine, COUT standard output	30
subroutine, RDKEY standard input	32
subroutines, some useful Monitor	61

suggestions, I/O programming	80	window, the text	31
summary of Monitor commands	59	-- Y --	
supply features, power.....	92	your own commands, creating	57
supply schematic, power	93	-- Z --	
supply, the Apple power	2, 28, 92	zero page memory maps	74
switches, soft.....	12, 79, 98	zero, page	69, 74
switches, screen soft.....	12		
switches, toggle.....	79		
switches, COUT, KEYIN	83		
switches, CSW/KSW	83		
system memory map	68		
(system stack), page one	69		
system timing	90		

-- T --

tape, saving to cassette	46
tape, reading from cassette	47
text mode, inverse	32
text mode, normal	32
text screen, the	11, 16
text video mode, the	14
text window special locations	31
text window, the	31
timing signals and relationships	91
timing, system	90
toggle switches	79
TRACE, STEP and	26, 51

-- U --

"USER 1" jumper	99
useful Monitor subroutines, some	61
utility strobe output	25

-- V --

values, Normal/Inverse control	32
varieties of Apples	25
vector, soft entry	37
video connector	9
video connector, auxiliary	9
video display	9
video display special locations	13
video generator, the	96
video mode, the text	14
video mode, the Low-Res	17
video mode, the High-Res	19
video output jacks	97

-- W --

warm start	36
window special locations, text	31

INDEX OF FIGURES

Figure 1. Map of the Text screen	16
Figure 2. Map of the Low-Res mode	18
Figure 3. Map of the High-Res screen	21
Figure 4. Cursor-moving escape codes	35
Figure 5. System Memory Map	68
Figure 6. Memory Configurations	71
Figure 7. Configuration Block Pinouts	71
Figure 8. Expansion ROM Enable circuit	85
Figure 9. SCFXX decoding	85
Figure 10. The Apple Main Board	89
Figure 11. Timing Signals	91
Figure 12. Power Supply Schematic	93
Figure 13. ROM Pinout	95
Figure 14. RAM Pinouts	96
Figure 15. Auxiliary Video Connector	98
Figure 16. Game I/O Connector Pinout	100
Figure 17. Keyboard Schematic Drawing	101
Figure 18. Keyboard connector Pinout	103
Figure 19. Power Connector	104
Figure 20. Speaker Connector	105
Figure 21. Peripheral Connector Pinout	106
Figure 22. Main Board Schematic	110-115

INDEX OF PHOTOS

Photo 1. The Apple II	2
Photo 2. The Apple Power Supply	3
Photo 3. The Apple Keyboard.....	6
Photo 4. The Video Connectors	10
Photo 5. Eurapple jumper pads.....	11
Photo 6. The Apple Character Set	14
Photo 7. The Game I/O Connector	23
Photo 8. The USER 1 Jumper	99

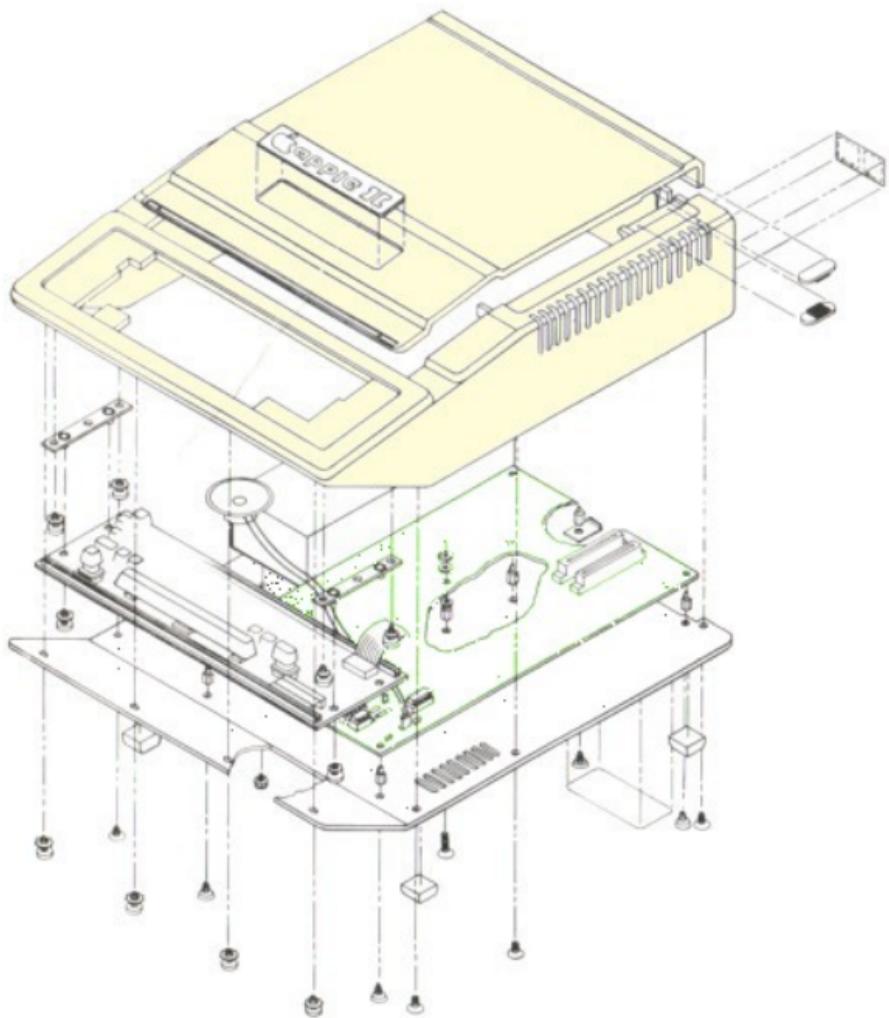
INDEX OF TABLES

Table 1. Keyboard Special Locations	6
Table 2. Keys and their ASCII codes	7
Table 3. The ASCII Character Set.....	8
Table 4. Video Display Memory Ranges	12
Table 5. Screen Soft Switches.....	13
Table 6. Screen Mode Combinations.....	13
Table 7. ASCII Screen Character Set.....	15
Table 8. Low-Resolution Colors.....	17
Table 9. Annunciator Special Locations	24
Table 10. Input/Output Special Locations	25
Table 11. Text Window Special Locations	31
Table 12. Normal/Inverse Control Values	32
Table 13. Autostart ROM Special Locations	37
Table 14. Page Three Monitor Locations	65
Table 15. Mini-Assembler Address Formats	66
Table 16. RAM Organization and Usage	69
Table 17. ROM Organization and Usage	72
Table 18. Monitor Zero Page Usage	74
Table 19. Applesoft II Zero Page Usage	74
Table 20. DOS 3.2 Zero Page Usage	75
Table 21. Integer BASIC Zero Page Usage	75
Table 22. Built-In I/O Locations	79
Table 23. Peripheral Card I/O Locations	80
Table 24. Peripheral Card PROM Locations	81
Table 25. I/O Location Base Addresses	82
Table 26. I/O Scratchpad RAM Addresses	83
Signal Descriptions:	
Table 27. Timing	90
Table 28. Auxiliary Video Output	97
Table 29. Game I/O Connector	100
Table 30. Keyboard Connector	102
Table 31. Power Connector	104
Table 32. Speaker Connector	105
Table 33. Peripheral Connector	107ff

CAST OF CHARACTERS

!	33
#	66
\$	50, 66
&	65
*	33, 38, 40
+	55
-	55
:	(colon) 43
.	(period) 41
<	45, 46
>	33
?	33
@	35
A	34
B	34
C	35
D	35
E	35
F	35
G	48
I	25, 35, 54
J	25, 35
K	25, 35
L	49
M	25, 35, 45
N	54, 55
R	47
S	52
T	52
V	46
W	47
CTRL B	54
CTRL C	30, 40, 54
CTRL E	53
CTRL G (bell)	30
CTRL H (-)	30, 33, 34
CTRL J (line feed)	30
CTRL K	55
CTRL P	54
CTRL S	26, 30
CTRL U (-)	33, 34
CTRL X	33
CTRL Y	57, 58
ESC	25, 34
RETURN	30, 33, 43
[8
\	8, 33
]	33
_	50
8	







apple computer inc.

10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014

030-0004-C